

# *Latin Prose Composition*



*R. A. LITTLE*

**OFFICE COPY**

**This Sample must not be  
destroyed.**

**PRICE. 75 CENTS**

**TORONTO  
THE COPP CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED**


RB157,972



*Presented to the*  
LIBRARY *of the*  
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO  
*by*  
Copp, Clark Pitman Ltd.







Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2015



# LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

BY

R. A. LITTLE, B.A.

*Classical Master London Collegiate Institute.*



TORONTO :

THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED.

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand  
nine hundred and one, by THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED, Toronto, Ontario,  
in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

## PREFACE TO SECOND EDITION.

---

The favorable reception which the first edition of this treatise met with from classical teachers, and the adoption of it in many schools and colleges throughout the Dominion, have encouraged the author to make the second edition as accurate and satisfactory as possible.

The author gladly takes this opportunity of expressing his gratitude to those fellow-teachers who have testified to their appreciation of the book, and whose suggestions have been very valuable in its revision.

R. A. L.

1904.





## PREFACE.

---

A new work on Latin Prose seems at first thought altogether superfluous, the works on the subject already existing being so numerous, so varied in character, and in many cases so excellent. The reasons, however, which justified their appearance justify also the appearance of a new one. Conditions are constantly changing, and these demand new groupings and new arrangement of old material, however excellent that may be in itself.

The position of Classics in our schools has undergone in late years a radical change. In competition with other subjects on the already wide curriculum of secondary education, and with others clamoring for recognition, the Classics have entered upon a struggle which renders it necessary to vindicate afresh their supreme value as an educational instrument in order to retain for them even the most limited amount of time necessary to make them of any real value to the student. The commercialism of our age has stamped itself upon our educational aims and methods. The average student has no longer at his disposal the amount of time to devote to classical study that could be given to it in former years. We must adapt ourselves to the changing mode of thought and life, and demonstrate anew by practical results the essential value of the Classics. We must so adjust our methods that the student can accomplish the same practical result in considerably less time than formerly. It is more than ever necessary to show by the results of at most three years at Latin some solid foundation of mental training derived therefrom as the hope and promise of further study.

It will be readily admitted that for the best comprehension of Latin literature, and for getting the best educational results from the study of Latin, much depends upon the teaching and study of Latin Prose. The student who spends only a year or two at Latin—and the same would be true of any other language—memorizing language-forms for the most part, and learning the Latin equivalents for the simplest ideas in English, without acquiring the faintest conception of the essential structure of the Latin language and its excellencies in comparison with the English language, has to all intents and purposes simply

wasted his time. He has acquired comparatively nothing valuable to him either for the enjoyment of life, the promotion of his practical usefulness or the development of his mental powers. On the other hand, for the student who has a reasonable amount of time and reasonable aptitude for the study of Latin, so that it is possible for him to get into the region of the higher study of the language, where the accurate transference of the thought of one language into the other is his chief concern, Latin furnishes an unrivalled instrument for the development of the mental powers. The translation of a suitable piece of English prose into Latin involves in a higher degree than any other single exercise the simultaneous training of the logical, the imaginative and the aesthetic faculties of the mind.

This book is designed to enable the student at an early period to recognize, and, in some measure, reproduce, the beauties and excellencies of Latin discourse, and also at as early a period as possible to enable him to get valuable training and valuable learning that will be of service to him in the better understanding of the English language and the recognition of its strength and weakness. It is during these early years that he ought to get a thorough grasp of the outstanding differences between the English and Latin languages, and be thoroughly trained to apply the knowledge thus gained to the better appreciation and use of his own language.

It is from this estimate of the needs of our pupils, in view of the prevailing conditions under our own system, that this work has been undertaken. It is the outgrowth of the author's own experience in classical teaching. The arrangement and method of the book are his own, and already have the approval of many who are working under similar conditions with himself. As far as possible the phraseology of examples, rules and explanations that has become familiar to all those engaged in practical work has been maintained. In the constant drill required in the teaching of Latin Prose there is very great economy in sameness of expression. The aim, therefore, has been to preserve what has become to all teachers the standard expression of ever-recurring ideas. There are certain standard examples in illustration of rules, standard statements of principles and of rules, to which every teacher continually resorts, and these have not been abandoned except where accuracy and conciseness of statement made it necessary to do so.

It is the author's firm conviction, based on practical experience, that no department of classical work produces so valuable and so quick results in either mental training or appreciative understanding of the language



as the teaching of continuous prose. The great essentials of adaptation, structure, and form, if properly presented, are readily mastered, and no field of study, other than continuous prose, affords the student more real pleasure, which is a great desideratum in classical teaching. One of the great benefits is that it gives point and interest, otherwise never obtained, to all his subsequent reading. In this exercise, the logical and the imaginative faculties are constantly brought into play. To the thorough student this is an unfailing source of enjoyment. It is the joy of revelation, the joy of discovery. Nor need we despair of even awakening the artistic faculties to an appreciation of the beauties of balance, symmetry, rhythm, and cadence of Latin discourse. This will, in any case, be slow in coming, and can only come at all through constant study and imitation of the great masters. It should be the teacher's constant aim to train the student to observe and note these features of Latin discourse in all reading of the authors. But however disappointing the results of the greatest effort may be in the production of good Latin Prose by the pupil, the constant drill on continuous prose cannot be disregarded by any teacher who wishes to get the best results from the standpoint of mental discipline out of the study of Latin.

The greatest care has been exercised in the choosing and framing of extracts. Progress in Latin Prose depends largely on the judicious selection of pieces suited to the capacity of the pupil. The most careful grading and constant repetition of similar structures are necessary to ensure progress. Every selection should be one which will lend itself fairly to the necessities of Latin Prose and should contain no sentence nor thought absolutely beyond the capacity of the pupil to represent in Latin. The author has very little sympathy with the idea that it is either necessary or proper to attempt to render into Latin, modern ideas entirely foreign to Roman thought and civilization. Neither the aims nor necessities of classical study demand the practice of mere paraphrasing. No doubt it is to some an agreeable pastime, much the same as the working out of an intricate puzzle may be to a skilled mathematician, but in either case it is not added power, but mere delectation that is sought after.

It is scarcely necessary to urge the desirability of the student having a separate book on Prose for the proper study of Latin. Without a fairly thorough knowledge of the principles of Latin Prose no thorough work on the reading of authors can be done. Without a thorough systematic treatment of Latin Prose in a separate book no thorough knowledge of its principles can ever be acquired. A scrap-book on a

subject may furnish some interesting details, but it can give no organized treatment nor be an efficient means of conveying a working knowledge of that subject.

The arrangement of the book was in a measure determined by the probable course the pupil had already taken in Latin. It presupposes a course in an introductory book and is fitted for a pupil beginning the reading of Caesar. The placing of all the principal rules in connection with the verb near the beginning of the book was determined not only by the main principle running through the book, viz., that the verb is the crux of Latin and by the conviction that a thorough mastery of these rules was the first essential in the writing of Latin Prose, but also by the fact that this arrangement afforded for the pupil a review of these rules which he must already have learned in detail in his introductory book.

In the preparation of the work all the latest authorities have been consulted. The author has striven at all times to be clear, concise and simple. The book is not burdened with definitions and rules which the student must already have learned in other class-rooms or in his introductory book.

To several fellow-teachers who have given encouragement and have kindly assisted with suggestions during the preparation of the book, the author herewith tenders his sincerest thanks. Among the numerous books on Latin Prose from which he not only derived much inspiration on the subject, but to which he is also under obligation for assistance derived therefrom, special mention should be made of the works of Dr. Bradley, Dr. Ramsay, Dr. Potts and Dr. Postgate. Of the many grammars which have been consulted, most assistance has been derived from Roby's, and on all points where divergence of opinion prevailed, great weight has been attached to the judgment of Prof. Bennet.

R. A. L.

LONDON COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE,  
*Sept., 1901.*

---

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

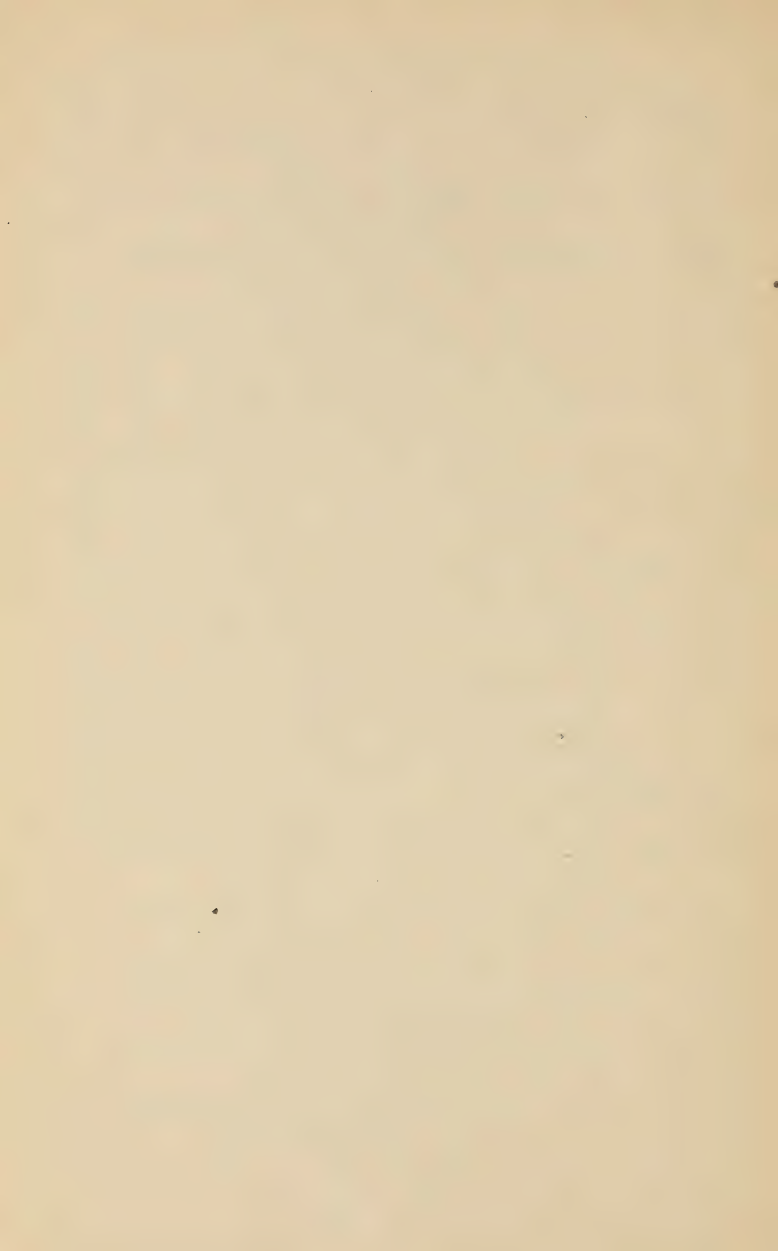
---

LESSONS.	PAGE
I.—Preliminary Rules.....	1
Appositives .....	4
Order of Words .....	4
EXERCISES I-IV .....	6
II.—Style and Connection.....	8
EXERCISE V.....	8
III.—The Verb.....	9
EXERCISE VI. ....	9
IV.—Indirect Object—Transitive and Intransitive Verbs..	10
EXERCISES VII, VIII.....	13
V.—Transitive and Intransitive Verbs—Middle Voice....	14
EXERCISES IX, X.....	15
VI.—Modal Verbs—Supplementary Infinitive—Impersonal	
Verbs.....	17
EXERCISES XI, XII.....	18
VII.—Composite Subjects.....	20
EXERCISES XIII-XVII.....	21
VIII.—Translating the Thought.....	23
EXERCISES XVIII-XX.....	25
IX.—Differences of Idiom—The Noun.....	27
EXERCISE XXI.....	28
X.—Order of Words.....	29
XI.—Participles.....	31
EXERCISE XXII.....	34
XII.—Idioms—Sentence—Structure.....	35
EXERCISE XXIII.....	37
XIII.—Ablative Absolute.....	38
EXERCISES XXIV-XXVII.....	39
XIV.—Consistency of Latin Style.....	43
EXERCISES XXVIII, XXIX.....	44
XV.—The Infinitive.....	45



LESSONS.	PAGE
EXERCISES XXX-XXXIII.....	49
XVI.—Sentence-Structure.....	51
EXERCISES XXXIV-XXXVI.....	51
XVII.—The Supines—Gerund and Gerundive .....	53
EXERCISES XXXVII-XL.....	58
XVIII.—Can, Could—May, Might—Ought, Should, Must....	60
EXERCISE XLI.....	61
XIX.—Time—Roman Calendar.....	61
EXERCISE XLII.....	63
XX.—Place .....	66
EXERCISES XLIII-XLV.....	68
XXI.—The Accusative Case—Summary of Rules.....	69
EXERCISES XLVI, XLVII.....	71
XXII.—The Dative—Summary of Rules.....	72
EXERCISES XLVIII-LI.....	76
XXIII.—The Genitive—Summary of Rules, Idioms.....	78
EXERCISES LII-LVI.....	83
XXIV.—The Ablative—Summary of Rules.....	85
EXERCISES LVII, LVIII.....	89
XXV.—Pronouns—Personal, Demonstrative, Intensive, Possessive, Reflexive, Reciprocal .....	91
EXERCISE LIX.....	93
XXVI.—Relative Pronoun.....	94
EXERCISE LX.....	96
XXVII.—Pronouns—Interrogative, Indefinite.....	97
EXERCISE LXI.....	98
XXVIII.—Correlatives.....	99
EXERCISE LXII.....	101
XXIX.—The Subjunctive Mood—In Independent Sentences ..	102
EXERCISE LXIII.....	104
XXX.—Style—Limitations of the Period, Oratorical Style, Epistolary Style.....	105
XXXI.—Epistolary Style.....	109
EXERCISES LXIV-LXVI.....	109
XXXII.—Final Clauses— <i>ut</i> , <i>ne</i> , <i>quo</i> —Sequence of Tenses.....	111
EXERCISES LXVII-LXIX.....	114
XXXIII.—Consecutive Clauses— <i>ut</i> , <i>ut non</i> —Sequence of Tenses.	116
EXERCISE LXX.....	118
XXXIV.—Clauses of Characteristic.....	119
EXERCISE LXXI.....	120

LESSONS.	PAGE
XXXV.—Substantive Clauses— <i>ut</i> and <i>ne</i> —Definitive or Explanatory .....	121
EXERCISES LXXII–LXXVIII.....	123
XXXVI.—Commands and Prohibitions— <i>Quin</i> and <i>Quominus</i> ....	126
EXERCISES LXXIX–LXXXI.....	128
XXXVII.—Interrogatives—Questions, Direct, Double, Indirect, Indirect Double.....	129
EXERCISES LXXXII–LXXXV.....	132
XXXVIII.—Causal Clauses—Virtual <i>Oratio Obliqua</i> —Concessive Clauses, Clauses of Comparison.....	135
EXERCISES LXXXVI, LXXXVII.....	138
XXXIX.—Temporal Clauses— <i>Cum</i> .....	139
EXERCISES LXXXVIII–XC.....	141
XL.—Conditional Clauses— <i>Dum</i> , <i>Modo</i> , <i>Dummodo</i> —Idioms—Irregular Constructions.....	143
EXERCISES XCI–XCIV.....	147
Virtual <i>Oratio Obliqua</i> .....	149
XLI.—The Relative—Recapitulatory.....	150
EXERCISE XCV.....	151
XLII.—Conditional Clauses in <i>Oratio Obliqua</i> — <i>foreut</i> , <i>futurum fuisse</i> .....	152
XLIII.—Indirect Narration— <i>Oratio Obliqua</i> .....	154
EXERCISES XCVI, XCVII.....	157
Additional Hints on Translation.....	158
Latin Models .....	159
Supplementary Exercises.....	160
Vocabulary .....	197
Index.....	221





## LESSON I.

### PRELIMINARY RULES.

#### 1. Predicate Nominative.

*Tullia erat filia Ciceronis.*

*Caius est iustus.*

*Galli appellantur.*

They are called Gauls.

#### 2. To.

*mihi librum dedit.*

He gave me a book, or, a book to me.

*ad me vēnit.*

He came to me.

*Romam vēnit.*

He came to Rome.

Do not use the Dative to express Motion.

To express 'motion to,' use '**ad** with Acc.'

Names of towns omit '**ad**.'

#### 3. For = in behalf of, in defence of = **pro**, with Abl.

*pro patriā pugnare.*

#### 4. The Ablative

is used to express a great variety of relations, under such general names as: Cause, Manner, Means, Instrument, Circumstances.

*vulneribus defessi.*

Spent with wounds.

*magnis itineribus.*

By forced marches.

*militum telis repulsi.*

Driven back by the darts of the soldiers.

*gladio interfectus.*

Killed with a sword.

*nudo corpore pugnare.*

To fight with body unprotected.

#### 5. 'By,' expressing the Agent.

*gladio occisus est a Caesare.*

He was killed by Caesar with a sword.

To express the Agent (a person), use **a** or **ab** with Abl. (**a** before consonants, **ab** before vowels).

6. **a, ab, from.**

The two general meanings of **a, ab**, are 'by,' to denote agent, and 'from,' in its general uses, to denote 'motion from' and 'separation,' as in English.

**ab urbe profectus est.**

He set out from the city.

**flumen Gallos ab Aquitanis dividit.**

The river separates the Gauls from the Aquitani.

**Romā.**

From Rome.

Names of towns omit the preposition to express 'motion from.'

7. '**with.**'

**gladio occisus est.** He was killed with a sword (instrument).

But when 'with' means '*along*,' or '*together*,' or '*in company*' with, translate by '**cum**,' with Abl.

**cum Caesare profectus est.**

*Obs.* : '**cum**' is written after, and as one word with the ablatives of the personal and reflexive pronouns, **mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum**, and sometimes after the relative **quibuscum**.

8. '**in.**'

**in urbe.**

In the city.

**in urbem.**

Into the city.

'**in**,' meaning 'in,' is followed by Abl.

'**in**,' meaning 'into,' is followed by Acc.

## 9.

**urbs quarto anno capta est.** The city was taken in the fourth year.

**urbs quatuor annos obsessa est.** The city was besieged for four years.

Time '*at or in which*' is expressed by Abl.

Time '*during which*' is expressed by Acc.

**10. is, ea, id** = he, she, it, they, when not emphatic and referring to some person or thing already named.

The oblique cases of '**is**' refer to some one, other than the subject of the verb.

**sui, sibi, se**, him, himself, are reflexive, and therefore refer to the subject of the verb.

His, her, its, = **eius** ; their, = **eorum** ; when not reflexive.

**suus**, = his, her, its, their ; when reflexive possessive.

**librum eius habes.**

**dux ei pepercit** (spared him).

**librum suum habet.**

**dux sibi pepercit** (spared himself).

**libros eorum habes.**

**eum interfecit.**

**libros suos habent.**

**se interfecit.**

**librum ei dedi.**

**cum eo profectus est.**

**puerum secum duxit.**

**hic**, this, 'this near me.'

**iste**, 'that near you,' 'that of yours' ; **iste amicus**, **iste liber**.

**ille**, that, 'that yonder,' 'that far away' ; is much more emphatic than 'is.' **ille equus**.

**iste** is often used to express contempt.

**ille** is often a complimentary term—the well-known, the famous.

Of two things mentioned before, **hic**—'the latter,' generally precedes **ille**—'the former.'

**idem**. The same.

**uterque**. Each of two.

**ambo**. Both together.

Latin has no reciprocal pronoun (each other, one another) ; **inter se**, **inter eos**, **inter nos**, **inter vos** are used instead.

## II. Pronoun omitted.

- (a) When a pronoun is in the Nom. Case, subject to a verb, it is not expressed in Latin except for the sake of emphasis or contrast.

tu **Tarentum amisisti**, **ego**  
**recepi.**

You lost Tarentum, I have  
retaken it.

- (b) Similarly, the possessive pronoun is seldom expressed when there can be no doubt as to the reference.

**matres filias amant.**

- (c) But when emphatic (his own) or necessary for the exact meaning, it is expressed.

**suos amicos quisque amat.**

Each one loves his own friends.

## 12.

## APPOSITIVES.

- (a) **Cicero consul ab omnibus laudabatur.**  
**Ciceronem consulem laudaverunt.**

<b>usus stultorum magister.</b>	Experience the instructor of fools.
<b>historia magistra.</b>	History the instructress.
<b>exercitus victor.</b>	The victorious army.
<b>classis victrix.</b>	The victorious fleet.

An appositive agrees with its subject in case, and also, when possible, in gender.

- (b) The city of Rome.                      **urbs Roma** (apposition).  
 The island of Sardinia.                **insula Sardinia.**

- (c) **Cicero consul** may mean Cicero *when*, or, *as*, consul.  
**ego puer hoc feci.**                      When a boy I did this.

‘when,’ ‘as,’ ‘for’ are omitted in Latin when apposition is implied.

## 13.

<b>boni sapientesque.</b>	The good and wise.
<b>praeteritā, orum. N. Pl.</b>	Past things, the past.
<b>futurā, orum. N. Pl.</b>	The future,
	but,
<b>rerum futurarum.</b>	Of the future.

The words ‘men’ and ‘things’ need not be expressed when the meaning is clear. In the last example, if ‘**futurorum**’ alone were used it might be masculine—of future men, of posterity.

## 14.

## ORDER OF WORDS.

There are in writing even simple sentences certain fundamental rules which are in general observed and which must be noted by the student and applied at the very beginning.

**Caesar — Gallos — laudavit.**

**Caesar — Gallis — praemia — dedit.**

**Tum — Caesar — Gallis — praemia — dedit.**

**Caesar — statim — legionem — in Galliam — misit.**

**Pavor Numidarum — Romanis iam admodum fessis — victoriam — dedit.**

**Caesar imperator Romanus — Labieno legato fortissimo — legionem vere primo in Italia conscriptam — dedit.**



The usual order of words in a simple sentence is :—1. The subject. 2. Adverbs or other words expressing time, place, manner, etc. 3. Indirect object. 4. Direct object. 5. The verb.

Demonstrative, relative, or other word indicating connection with previous sentence *precedes* even the subject.

(b) The following words never begin a sentence :—

**autem, enim, igitur, vero, quoque, quidem.**

**quoque** and **quidem** follow the words which they emphasise.

The others usually come after the first important word.

(c) Adjectives and other qualifying words usually follow the noun.

(d) Adverbs and adverbial phrases directly connected with the verb precede it.

(e) Words or phrases logically connected with the subject or object must be placed in close connection with it.

**Duo Numidae cum litteris ad Hannibalem missi sunt.**

(f) 'sum' or a similar weak verb seldom comes last.

**Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres.**

**reliquae naves sunt inutiles.**

## 15.

All these rules are based upon and subject to the following principles :—

1. The two most emphatic positions in a sentence are the beginning and the end.
2. Emphasis is marked by placing a word out of its normal position.
3. Any word—noun, verb, adjective, or adverb—may be placed last for emphasis.
4. The claims of euphony must also be considered.

**in miseriam nascimur sempiternam.**

We are born to misery everlasting.

**pecunia a patre exacta est crudeliter.**

The money was extorted from the father in a manner that was cruel.

**aere utuntur importato.**

The bronze they use is imported.

**aliud iter habebant nullum.**

Other road they had none.

**omnes fere qui eo mari uti consueverant habent vectigāles.**

They hold almost all who were accustomed to use that sea tributary.

**angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur.**

They thought the territory they had was limited.

**horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae.**

## EXERCISE I.

(The pupil is supposed to know the common words in this exercise.)

1. The grandson of the king will walk to Tarentum.
2. The man was killed by a soldier with an arrow.
3. The judges were just. These pupils will be diligent.
4. A broad road separates the city from the country.
5. The valor of the brave soldiers was praised by all the citizens.
6. The city, which the river divides into two parts, was taken by Scipio, the general of the Romans.
7. The orations of Cicero, the orator, were praised by all.
8. That son of yours was seen on the same day in the Campus Martius.
9. When was that letter, which was sent to you by the consul from Sicily, received by you?
10. The soldiers, wearied by long marches, were unwilling to fight any longer, and threw away their arms.
11. Two boys set out from the city along with their father, and after three days arrived at the river.
12. Ten men came with us to Rome, and they are still in the city.

Separate, divide.

divido, 3, vīsi, vīsus.

Receive.

accipio, 3, cēpi, ceptus.

To be unwilling.

nōlo, nolle, nolui.

Throw away.

abicio, 3, iēci, iectus.

Arrive at.

pervēnire ad.

Still (of present time).

etiam nunc.

## EXERCISE II.

1. Two slaves who had been captured by the cavalry escaped on the same day to their masters.
2. You will go with Pompey to Greece, we will stay in Italy.
3. No man can know everything, we are learning a few things.
4. On that disastrous day you were absent in the country, I accidentally had set out on the previous day for Athens.
5. With all speed<sup>1</sup> I returned next summer in company with your dear friend Plancus to the Isle of Malta.
6. Everybody can know something<sup>2</sup> about the past; a wise man only can foresee approaching danger.
7. Of (ex) ten virgins, five were wise and five were foolish.
8. Last year I saw both your brother and sister in the city. The latter had come by ship from Marseilles, the former on foot<sup>3</sup> from Tarentum. Both consuls were<sup>4</sup> in Africa in that year.

<sup>1</sup> as quickly as possible. <sup>2</sup> aliquid. <sup>3</sup> The precision of Latin requires the plural.

<sup>4</sup> Say, each (uterque) consul was.

Capture.	cāpio, 3, cēpi, captus.
Escape.	effugio, 3, fūgi, fugiturus.
Know.	scio, 4.
Learn.	disco, 3, didici.
Accidentally, by chance.	forte.
Previous.	prior.
Approaching (Adj.).	futurus, imminens.
Foresee.	providēo, 2, vīdi vīsus.
Disastrous.	funestus.

## EXERCISE III.

1. In spring, in summer, in winter, in autumn, in the night, at day-break, at sunset, at sunrise, in the morning, on the following day.
2. In the tenth year, the city which the general had besieged by land and sea, was taken by storm.
3. For six days the soldiers marched through the country of the enemy, and on the seventh, pitched their camp on the bank of the deep river.
4. He saw his mother yesterday in the city. I shall see his brother. The guards killed him, her, them. They killed themselves.
5. The cities were taken by Caesar when consul. With all his forces he sailed to the island of Britain.
6. We cannot foretell the future; the wise know much about the past.
7. He is banishing all the good and wise. The state<sup>1</sup> will never elect him consul.

Sunset.	sōlis occāsus, ūs.
Sunrise.	sōl oriens.
Besiege.	obsīdeo, 2, sēdi, sessus.
Morning.	mane (indeclinable).
Take by storm.	expugno, 1.
March.	iter facere.
Sail.	navigo, 1.
Foretell.	praedicere.
Banish.	ex civitāte pellere.

---

<sup>1</sup> State = citizens.

## EXERCISE IV.

The most renowned city of Asia and (one) most friendly to us, had been invested<sup>1</sup> by the king himself with an immense<sup>2</sup> army. This L. Lucullus by his courage<sup>3</sup> and skill<sup>4</sup> freed<sup>5</sup> from all the dangers of a siege.<sup>6</sup> By the same general a large and well equipped<sup>7</sup> fleet, which was on its way<sup>8</sup> to Italy, was crushed<sup>9</sup> and sunk.<sup>10</sup> Large forces of the enemy, besides,<sup>11</sup> had been destroyed in many battles.

---

<sup>1</sup> Obsideo. <sup>2</sup>=very large. <sup>3</sup>virtus. <sup>4</sup>consilium. <sup>5</sup>libero with Abl. without a preposition. <sup>6</sup>obsidio, onis. <sup>7</sup>ornatus. <sup>8</sup>Translate the simple meaning. <sup>9</sup>supero. <sup>10</sup>deprimo, 3, pressi, pressus. <sup>11</sup>praeterea.

## LESSON II.

## 16. STYLE AND CONNECTION.

In Latin the mere details of a narrative are written in detached style as in English. The connection, however, of each sentence with the preceding one must if possible be clearly indicated. This is done by some word,—a relative, adverb, conjunction, or some word repeated from the previous sentence.

## EXERCISE V.

A. Over<sup>1</sup> **that river** was a bridge. **There** he places a guard<sup>2</sup> and on the other side<sup>3</sup> of the river leaves Quintus Titurius, his lieutenant, with six cohorts. He orders him to fortify the **camp**<sup>4</sup> with a rampart and trench. **From this camp** the town of the Remi, by name Bibrax, was distant eight miles. The Belgae began to assault it on<sup>5</sup> the march with great force.<sup>6</sup> The townspeople<sup>7</sup> held out that day **with great difficulty**.<sup>8</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> In with Abl. <sup>2</sup>praesidium. <sup>3</sup>pars. <sup>4</sup>Emphatic word. <sup>5</sup>ex. <sup>6</sup>impetus. <sup>7</sup>Expressed impersonally. It was held out: **sustentatum est**. <sup>8</sup>**Aegre**: Emphatic word.

B. While these things are going on<sup>1</sup> among<sup>2</sup> the Veneti, Quintus Titurius Sabinus, at the head of<sup>3</sup> those forces, which he had received from Caesar, came into the territory of the Unelli. Viridovix was chief of<sup>4</sup> **these** and held supreme command<sup>5</sup> of all those states, which had revolted,<sup>6</sup> from which he had collected an army and large forces.

---

<sup>1</sup> Pass of **gero**. <sup>2</sup>in with Abl. <sup>3</sup>cum. <sup>4</sup>praesum with Dat. <sup>5</sup>**summa imperii**. <sup>6</sup>**deficio**.



## LESSON III.

## 17. THE VERB.

Observe the exact meaning of the Latin tenses.

<b>amo.</b>	I love, I am loving, I do love.
<b>amabam.</b>	I was loving.

The Impf. tense denotes continued, repeated or progressive action—I used to, began to, wished to (love).

<b>amavi,</b>	= (a) I have loved ; Pres. Pf.
	(b) I loved, I did love ; Historic Pf. ; Greek Aorist.

<b>amatus sum.</b>	I have been loved ; Pres. Pf.
	I was loved ; Historic Pf.

Latin is very exact in its use of the proper tense. (Ex. vi, 5 and 6.)

The Present tense is very often used both in English and Latin in describing or narrating past events. The object is to give life and vividness to the statement.

Such a present is called an **Historic Present**.

## EXERCISE VI.

1. Ten towns were taken in that year.
2. The other consul was gathering his forces.
3. The enemy 'were trying to prevent' our men from crossing the river.
4. Our men prevented them from entering the fortifications.
5. I will come if I can (shall be able).
6. If he arrives (—shall have arrived) before daybreak he will see his brother in the city to-day.
7. Whenever the enemy made (use Plupf. Indic., see 212) an attack the Roman soldiers used to retreat within their lines.
8. Have you not been spending this winter with your daughter at Rome?
9. Have you not been living at Rome already for three years? (= Are you not already living the third year at Rome?)
10. With difficulty our men held out against the attack of the enemy for two hours.
11. I have long desired to see your brother Plancus.

Gather (trans.)	convōco, 1.
Prevent.	prohibeo, 2, with Acc. and Infin.
Enter.	ingrēdior, gredi, gressus.
Fortification, line.	munitio, ōnis.
Retreat.	se recipere.
Spend (time).	ago, 3, ēgi, actus.
With difficulty.	aegre ; vix.
Hold out against.	sustineo, 2, ui, tentus.
I have long desired.	iam pridem cupio, 3, īvi, itus.

## LESSON IV.

### 18. Indirect Object.

Transitive verbs govern a Direct Object, *i.e.*, an object directly acted upon by the action of the verb.

An Indirect Object is one which is affected by or interested in the action of the verb to a less degree. It may be joined to Transitive verbs (in connection with a direct object) or Intransitive verbs, and is put in the Dative.

**librum tibi dabo.**

**cives legibus parent.**

Citizens obey the laws.

### 19.

Every really Transitive verb in Latin governs the Accusative, but many verbs that are Transitive in English have Intransitive equivalents in Latin, which of course take a *Dative* of the *Indirect Object*.

Such verbs are :—

Please.	placeo, 2.	I am pleasing to.
Favor.	faveo, 2, fāvi, fauturus.	I am favorable to.
Trust.	fido, 3, fīsus ; confido.	
Assist.	prosum ; auxiliior, 1.	

and their contraries :—Displease. displiceo, 2.

Oppose. obsto, 1, stiti.

Distrust. diffido.

Injure. noceo, 2.

Believe.	crēdo, 3, credidi, creditus.
Persuade.	persuādeo, 2, suāsī, suāsum.
Command.	impero, 1.
Obey.	pāreo, 2; obedio, 4.
Serve.	servio, 4.
Resist.	resisto, 3, restiti.
Envy.	invidēo, 2, vīdi, vīsus.
Spare.	parco, 3, peperci.
Pardon.	ignosco, 3, nōvi, noturus.
Threaten.	mīnor, 1; immineo, ēre.
Be angry.	īrascor, 3, iratus; succenseo, ēre.

These verbs do not take a Dative because they happen to be able to be rendered into a phrase seemingly Dative in form (I am obedient to, I am servant to, etc.), but because the act implied in the verbal idea is such that it can only indirectly affect the object. Verbs of apparently the same meaning as some of these are Transitive in their verbal idea, and govern the Accusative.\*

## 20.

Such exceptions that govern the **Accusative** are :—

iuvo; adiuvo, 1, iuvi, iutus.	Aid.
delecto, 1.	Delight.
laedo, 3, si, sus.	Injure.
offendo, 3, di, sus.	Offend.
iubeo, 2, iussi, iussus.	Order.
veto, 1, vetui, vetitus.	Forbid.
prohibeo, 2.	Prohibit.
rego, 3.	Rule.
guberno, 1.	Direct.

## 21.

Caesari confisus.	Trusting to Caesar.
tempore confisus.	Trusting to the time.
fido, confido.	Take, Dative of a Person; Ablative of Thing.

---

\* **noceo**, I injure by an indirect act. **laedo**, I injure by a direct act.

## 22. Verbs Transitive and Intransitive.

ego tibi gratulor	I congratulate you.
ego tibi victoriam gratulor.	I congratulate you on your victory.
mihi ignosce.	Pardon me.
mihi hanc culpam ignosce.	Forgive me this fault.
hostibus imperat.	He commands the enemy.
hostibus frumentum imperat.	He orders corn from the enemy.
civitatibus equites imperat.	He levies cavalry from the states.
homini minatur.	He threatens the man.
homini mortem minatur.	He threatens the man with death.
haec Caesari responderunt.	They gave this reply to Caesar.
puero suadeo or persuadeo.	I persuade the boy.
haec puero persuasi.	I persuaded the boy of this.

These verbs have a double construction.

They are **Transitive** as regards **Things** (Direct Object) and **Intransitive** as regards **Persons** (Indirect Object).

## 23.

consulĕre aliquem.	To consult some one.
consulere alicui.	To take counsel, or to care, for some one.
prospicĕre, providĕre bellum.	To foresee war.
prospicere, providere bello.	To provide for war.
temperare mare.	To rule or control the sea.
temperare lacrimis.	To set bounds to, refrain from tears.
cavĕre aliquem.	To ward off, be on one's guard against.
cavere alicui.	To care for, consult for.

These verbs are **Transitive** and take a **Direct Object** ; or **Intransitive** and take an **Indirect Object**. They differ in meaning accordingly.

**moderor**, 1.—I restrain, also takes Acc. or Dat., but without any special difference in meaning.



## EXERCISE VII.

1. The majority resolved (—It pleased the greater part) to abandon the baggage.
2. Most people trust those who assist them and believe those who serve them well.
3. We will pardon the guilty man and spare his innocent son.
4. The guards forbade the prisoners to leave the camp.
5. We resisted the barbarians as long as possible.
6. They did not envy the rich.
7. Trusting to the season (time) of the year, they fled into the woods.
8. We will never be able to persuade that friend of yours.

Leave, abandon.

relinquo, 3, liqui, lictus.

Leave, go out of.

exeo, 4, ii, iturus ;

excēdo, 3, cessi, cessurus.

Long (of time).

diū, diutius, diutissime.

As . . . as possible.

quam, with superlative of adj. or adv.

Trusting.

confisus.

## EXERCISE VIII.

1. The judge threatened the accused men with imprisonment.
2. When Caesar asked (To Caesar asking) (them) about the roads they made no reply (answered nothing).
3. When we asked (you) in reference to your brother's return you made a false reply.
4. Hannibal levied cavalry from the Spaniards.
5. The augurs foresaw the dangers threatening the state.
6. I pardoned him for many offences.
7. He will never forgive me.
8. Your friends will help you (when) in trouble.
9. We will go to meet you on your return (=you returning).

Imprisonment—chains.

vinculă, orum.

An accused man.

reus.

Return.

reditus, ūs.

Augur.

augur, uris.

Threatening

imminens (dative).

Offence.

peccātum.

Forgive

ignosco ; veniam do (dat. of person, gen. of thing).

condōno, 1.

To be in trouble.

labōro, 1.

Go to meet.

obviam eo, with dat.

## LESSON V.

## 24. Passive Use of Intransitive Verbs.

puer puellam amat. Active form.

puella a puero amatur. Passive form.

pueri magistro parent. Active form. Boys obey their master.

magistro a pueris paretur. Passive form.

Only Transitive verbs can be used personally in the passive.

Intransitive verbs must be used impersonally in the passive.

I am obeyed—*mihi paretur*.—It is obeyed to me ; obedience is rendered to me.

You are envied. *tibi invidetur*.

I am injured by him. *mihi ab eo nocetur*.

(b) *hoc puero persuasi* (active form). I persuaded the boy of this.

*hoc puero a me persuasum est* (passive form). The boy was persuaded of this by me.

*hoc* is subject to *persuasum est*.

In the case of verbs that are Transitive as regards things (Direct Object), and Intransitive as regards persons (Indirect Object), the **Thing** (Direct Object) may become the **Subject** in the **Passive** ; but not so the Person (Indirect Object).

## 25. English Verbs, Transitive and Intransitive.

He increases the number of the soldiers. *numerus militum auget*.

The number of the soldiers is being increased. *numerus militum augetur*.

The number of the soldiers increases. *numerus militum crescit*.

He assembles the senate. *senatum convocat*—calls together.

The senate assembles. *senatus convēnit*—comes together.

Some Verbs in English are both Transitive and Intransitive. They are rendered into Latin by different words according to meaning.

Increase, make bigger. *augeo*, 2, *auxi*, *auctus*.

Increase, grow bigger. *cresco*, 3, *crēvi*, *creturus*.

Assemble, call together. *convoco*, 1.

Assemble, come together. *convēnio*, 4, *vēni*, *ventum*.

Leave, leave behind.  
Leave, go away from.

relinquo, 3, liqui, lictus.  
abeo, 4, ii, itum.  
excēdo, 3, cessi, cessum.

Burn, set on fire.

uro, 3, ussi, ustus.  
incendo, 3, di, sus.

Burn, glow.

ardeo, 2, arsi, arsurus.

## 26. Middle Voice.

He moves the table.

mensam mōvet.

The moon moves round the earth.

luna circa tellurem movetur.

All things move.

omnia moventur, or, se movent.

A large number of verbs in English are used in two senses, one Transitive, the other Reflexive or Middle. When a verb is used in the latter sense, corresponding to the middle voice in Greek, Latin either

(a) Uses the Passive voice.

(b) Inserts the Reflexive Pronoun.

(c) Uses a different verb.

He surrenders the city.

urbem dēdit.

The citizens surrender.

cīves se dēdunt.

The following verbs may be similarly used :—

Join.

iungo, 3, iunxi, iunctus.

He joins (the army).

(iungit se) ad or cum.

(iungitur) “ “ “

Move.

mōveo, 2, mōvi, mōtus.

Surrender.

dēdo, 3, dedidi, deditus.

Roll.

volvo, 3, volvi, volutus.

Change.

mūto, 1.

## EXERCISE IX.

1. The women and children were spared. We were persuaded.
2. If I am obeyed you will be pardoned. They were believed.
3. The poor are not envied. The ships were being injured.
4. No harm could be done to our ships on account of their size.
5. The boy will not be able to be persuaded of this because he is so foolish.
6. The enemy could no longer be resisted.
7. Resistance to the king will no longer be offered.
8. No resistance was offered to the enemies' attack.

9. He was believed by all the best men.
10. I taunt you with lowly birth.
11. He was taunted with his lowly birth.
12. The accused cannot be pardoned.

Size.

Not at all.

Foolish.

Because.

All the best men . . . each best man.

Taunt, cast up to.

Low birth.

**magnitūdo, inis.****nihil** (adverbial acc.)**stultus.****quod.****optimus quisque.****obicio** (with dat. and acc.)**ignōbitas, ātis, f.****EXERCISE X.**

1. The soldiers were assembled in (=into) the campus.
2. At nightfall the legions assembled in the Forum.
3. The number of the legions was increased in the following year.
4. Marcellus and his brother joined the army.
5. The Gauls at last surrendered to the Germans.
6. The cowardly generals will soon surrender the city.
7. The mountaineers accordingly were rolling stones down from the mountain into the defile.
8. Our men left their baggage in the pass.
9. The unhappy son left home in a hurry.
10. Then the tower began to move and the barbarians, in terror, surrendered without delay to Labienus, Caesar's lieutenant.
11. They immediately set all the villages on fire.
12. Shortly afterwards the camp was moved forward about six miles.<sup>1</sup>

At nightfall.

At last.

Accordingly.

Down from.

Defile, pass.

Baggage.

Unhappy.

In a hurry.

Tower.

Terrified.

Without delay.

Set on fire.

Shortly afterwards.

About (adverb).

**sub noctem.****tandem.****itaque** (placed first); **igitur** (placed second).**de** (abl.).**saltus, ūs ; faucēs, ium.****impedimentā, orum.****infēlix.****subito ; confestim.****turris, is, f.****perterritus.****sine morā.****incendo, 3, di, sus.****haud multum post ; paulo post.****circiter.**

<sup>1</sup> One mile, **mille passus**; two miles, **duo millia passuum**; Acc. of Extent of Space.



## LESSON VI.

### 27. Modal Verbs. Supplementary Infinitive.

hoc facere non potest.	This he cannot do.
incipio esse mōlestus.	I begin to be troublesome.
desine mirari.	Cease to wonder.
bonus esse videtur.	He seems to be good.
vult esse princeps.	He wishes to be first.

Observe that the verbs, *potest*, *incipio*, etc., require an infinitive to complete their meaning. They are called Modal Verbs. The following are such :—

*possum*, *queo*, *nequeo* ;  
*coepe*, *incipio*, *desino*, *desisto* ;  
*cupio*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *opto* ;  
*conor*, *statuo*, *debeo*, *soleo*, *assuesco*, *videor*, and others.

### 28. Impersonal Verbs

are of different kinds and have various constructions.

(a) Intransitive, governing no case. *tonat*, it thunders ; *fulgurat*, it lightens ; *pluit*, it rains ; *ningit*, it snows.

(b) The following take a *Dative* :—

*libet*, it pleases ; *licet*, it is allowed ; *placet*, it pleases ; *accidit*, it happens ; *contingit*, it befalls (of good fortune) ; *convenit*, it suits ; *expedit*, it is expedient.

(c) The following govern an *Accusative* :—

*fallit* ; *fugit*, it escapes ; *iuvat*, it delights.

(d) The following take an *Acc.*, and also an *Infinitive* :—

*decet me parere*.      It becomes me to obey.  
*dedecet*, it misbecomes.      *oportet*, it behoves.

(e) *miseret*, it pities ; *poenitet*, it repents ; *piget*, it grieves ;  
*pudet*, it shames ; *taedet*, it wearies ; take an *Acc. of the Person Feeling*, and *Gen. of the Thing Causing the feeling*.

*poenitet me meae stultitiae*.      I repent of my folly.  
*miseret me tui*.      I pity you.

(f) interest.  
refert.

It is the interest of, it is of importance to.  
It concerns.

Take a *Gen. of the Person or Thing Concerned*; but in the case of pronouns, the *Ablative Singular Fem. of the Possessive* is used.

interest omnium ; interest civitatis.  
meā refert. It concerns me.

## 29. The following Verbs take the Ablative:—

utor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, dignor.

These verbs are reflexive or are in the middle voice and the Ablative denotes the instrument or means.

ūtor, uti, usus.	I use, I serve myself with.
fruor, frui.	I enjoy, I enjoy myself with.
fungor, fungi, functus.	I perform, officio—my duty. I discharge myself by.
potior, iri, potitus.	I obtain possession of. regno—the kingdom. I am powerful (potens) by or with.
vescor, ci.	I feed upon ; I feed myself with.
dignor, ari, atus.	I deem worthy ; me laude, myself worthy of (with) praise.

## EXERCISE XI.

1. Cease, therefore, to be troublesome to the patriots, and be unwilling to join the enemies of the state.
2. You could not be persuaded.
3. Cicero preferred to go into exile rather than be condemned by the senate.
4. At first the conspirators seemed to be very bold, but they did not attempt to murder the consul openly.
5. In vain they endeavored to terrify the people (citizens), and overthrow the constitution (state).
6. We ought to be free. You may go home to-morrow.
7. As far as concerns me, you may leave the city at once.
8. It is not expedient for us to be at leisure to-day.
9. It becomes all to obey their superiors.
10. We pity him. He ought to repent of his folly.
11. Are you not ashamed of your cowardice?
12. It will be in the interests of all that<sup>1</sup> the city should be saved.

---

<sup>1</sup> the city to be saved. Omit 'that' and use Acc. with Infin.

Patriot.	bonus cīvis.
As far as concerns me.	quod ad me attinet.
Exile.	exilium, i.
Condemn.	condemno, l.
At first.	primo.
Conspirator.	coniurātus, i.
Murder.	interficio ; neco, l.
Openly.	palam.
Overthrow.	ēverto, 3, ti, sus.
Constitution.	rēpublica.
Superior.	superior ; mēlior.
Folly.	stultitia, ae.
Cowardice.	ignāvia, ae.

## EXERCISE XII.

1. We ought to use our time better.
2. It becomes magistrates to perform their duty well.
3. Our men quickly gained possession of the camp and baggage of the enemy.
4. The rich do not seem to enjoy their wealth.
5. Using the same men (as) guides, as (qui) had come from Iccius, they reached the camp in safety.
6. Labienus having gained possession of the camp of the enemy, quickly drove them through the wood to the banks of the river.
7. The rich do not always enjoy the wealth which they have acquired.
8. I was on most intimate terms with your son.
9. Vergil and Horace found a friend in Maecenas.
10. Caesar always put confidence in the loyalty of the tenth legion.

Duty.	officium, i.	
Seem.	videor, eri, visus.	
Wealth.	divitiae, arum.	
Guide.	dux.	
In safety,—safe.	incolumis ; tutus.	
Drive.	pello, 3, pepuli, pulsus.	
	compello, 3, puli, pulsus.	
	adipiscor, ci, adeptus.	
Acquire.		
To be on intimate terms with	} you. {	te familiariter uti.
To find a friend in		te amico uti.
Put confidence in.		confido.
Loyalty.		fidēs, eī.

## LESSON VII.

## 30.

## COMPOSITE SUBJECTS.

(1). **Caesar et Cicero erant clarissimi.**

**Ego et tu aderimus.**

**Ego et Balbus aderimus.**

**Tu et Balbus aderitis.**

**Et ego et soror mea amati sumus.**

(a) With two subjects in the singular, the verb, participle, or predicate adjective is in the plural.

(b) The verb agrees with the 1st person rather than with the 2nd, and with the 2nd rather than with the 3rd.

(c) **Ego**, 1st person, precedes **tu**, 2nd, or **Balbus**, 3rd; **tu**, 2nd person, precedes **Balbus**, 3rd.

(d) The masculine gender takes precedence over the feminine.

But other constructions are allowable in (d).

**Et ego et soror mea amati sumus**; or,

(a) **Amatus sum et ego et soror mea.**

(b) **Et ego et soror mea amata est.**

The verb may be in the plural or agree with the substantive nearest itself.

(2). So also :

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{templa multa arcesque delevit ; or,} \\ \text{templa arcesque multas delevit.} \end{array} \right.$

He destroyed many temples and citadels.

An adjective that qualifies two nouns of different genders agrees with the one nearest itself.

(3). **fides et pietas laudandae sunt** ; or, more usually,  
**fides et pietas laudanda sunt.**

Good faith and dutifulness are to be praised.

**virtus et ignavia inter se contraria sunt.** Courage and cowardice are contrary to each other.

When the substantives are *feminine abstract nouns* the Neuter is usually used in the predicate.

The explanation is that "things" (neuter plural) is implied in **laudanda** (things to be praised), and **contraria** (things contrary).

## 31.

Neither you nor I was present at this battle.

**neque ego neque tu hoc proelio adfuimus** ; or, more usually :—  
**neque ego hoc proelio adfui neque tu.**



A large multitude of citizens had assembled.

**magna multitudo civium convenerat** ; or, occasionally :—  
**magna multitudo civium convenerant.**

This latter construction, which is frequently found in English, is called **Constructio ad Sensum**, Construction according to Sense.

Such words as **exercitus**, **populus**, **senatus**, which denote a single composite body, and such as, like **exercitus**, have a plural, regularly take a singular verb.

### EXERCISE XIII.

1. If the army and you are in good health, it is well.
2. If your sister and you are in good health, it is well.
3. My brother and I have waged many wars in defence of our country.
4. Neither you nor your brother were ever in exile.
5. There were two armies in Gaul at that time.
6. Wisdom and folly are contrary to each other.
7. Rashness and change of purpose are not to be praised.
8. Duty and interest are often at variance.
9. A large multitude of citizens were present in the forum.

To be in good health.

**valeo**, 2, **ui.**

Folly.

**stultitia**, **ae.**

Rashness.

**temeritās**, **ātis**, **f.**

Change of purpose.

**inconstantia**, **ae.**

Duty (as opposed to expediency).

**honestās**, **ātis**, **f.** ; **honestā**, **n. pl.**

Interest, expediency.

**ūtilitās**, **ātis**, **f.** ; **ūtilia**, **n. pl.**

### EXERCISE XIV.

On the same day the enemy encamped (**consido**) at the foot of the mountain eight miles from Cæsar's camp. Accordingly at the third watch he orders his lieutenant, Titus Labienus, with two legions and those guides who knew the road, to ascend the highest ridge (**iugum**) of the mountain. At the fourth watch he himself sets out by the same route by which the enemy had gone, and sends all the cavalry ahead of him. Publius Considius, who had been in the army of Lucius Sulla and afterwards in (that) of Marcus Crassus, is sent ahead with scouts.

### EXERCISE XV.

Romulus and Remus, who were twin brothers (**gemini**), determined to build a new city. So on a fixed (**certus**) day Romulus took his stand on the Palatine mount, Remus on the Aventine. Soon Remus saw six vultures (**vultur**, **is**), but (**autem**) a little while afterwards Romulus saw twelve. The former saw the birds first; the latter saw a greater number.

They could not agree (**consentio**). Remus contemptuously (**ludibrio**) jumped over the new walls which Romulus had built. At once Romulus in a passion<sup>1</sup> pierced<sup>2</sup> his brother through with a sword. "So hereafter," said he, "shall perish whosoever else (**alius**) shall leap over my walls." Thus Romulus alone got possession of the sovereign power; the city was founded and called<sup>3</sup> by the name of the founder.

---

<sup>1</sup> = Angry, **iratus**. <sup>2</sup> Pierce through, **transfigo**, 3, **fixi**, **fixus**. <sup>3</sup> Say, 'founded', pf. part. pass. of **condo**, 'was called'; see 48.

### EXERCISE XVI.

The Albans with a large army resolved to make an attack on the Roman territory. They pitched their camp not more than five miles from the city. In this camp Cluilius, the Alban king, dies. The Albans then elect Mettius Fufetius dictator. In the meantime Tullus, the Roman king, proceeds with a hostile (**infestus**) army into Alban territory. This movement (**res**) forces Mettius to lead his army as near as possible<sup>1</sup> to the enemy. At last the two leaders, along with a few chiefs, come together for (**ad**) a conference (**colloquium**). There the Alban speaks (**inquit**): "The desire (**cupido**) for (of) empire rouses<sup>2</sup> to arms two related (**cognatus**) and neighboring (**vicinus**) peoples. The Etruscans are nearer to you than to us. As soon as you (shall) give the signal for (of) battle, they will at once attack our armies, the victorious and the vanquished. Can we not settle<sup>3</sup> the question without great slaughter?"<sup>4</sup> This proposition (**res**) commends itself to<sup>5</sup> Tullus, although he was somewhat<sup>6</sup> elated with hope of victory.

---

<sup>1</sup> **quam maxime ad** . . . **potest**. <sup>2</sup> **stimulo**, 1. <sup>3</sup> = decide. <sup>4</sup> **caedes is, f**, <sup>5</sup> = does not displease. <sup>6</sup> Comparative of **ferox**.

### EXERCISE XVII.

By chance there were in either army at the time, three brothers born at a birth (**trigemini**), unequal (**impar**) neither in age nor strength. The Roman brothers were called Horatii, the Alban brothers, Curiatii. The two armies had seated themselves<sup>1</sup> on either side (**utrimque**) in front of (**pro**) the camps. The signal is given and the young men engage (**concurro**). For a long time they fought and at last two Horatii, one after the other (**alius super alium**) fell dead; and all the Curiatii were severely wounded. The Alban army shouted (**conclamo**) with joy (**gaudium**); all hope had deserted the Roman legions, for three Curiatii had surrounded<sup>2</sup> the single Horatius. He was as yet without a scratch (**integer**), yet by no means a match (**par**) alone for the three together (**universi**). The Roman flees, the Albans pursue. Already he had run away (**aufugio**) a considerable distance (**aliquantum spatii**) from the<sup>3</sup> place where the fight<sup>4</sup> occurred; looking back (**respicio**) he sees them following at great intervals (**intervallum**). One was not far from him; against him he returned with great fury (**impetus**), and while the Alban army shouts to the Curiatii to<sup>5</sup> bring aid to their brother, Horatius had already slain one enemy and is making for (**peto**) the

second. Then with a shout the Romans aid their soldier and he hastens to finish (**defungor**) the fight. Soon the second Curiatius, who is not far distant, is killed; and now two only out of six remain (**supersum**), matched neither in hope nor strength. Horatius with his sword kills Curiatius, who was scarcely able to bear (**sustineo**) his arms. The Romans amid<sup>6</sup> rejoicing and congratulations receive Horatius and escort (**deduco**) him (back) to Rome.

---

<sup>1</sup> **Consido**, 3, **sedi**, **sessurus**. <sup>2</sup> **circumsto**, 1, **steti**. <sup>3</sup> = that, **is**. <sup>4</sup> Say, it was fought. <sup>5</sup> Express by **ut** with Pres. Subj. : **opem ferre** with Dat. <sup>6</sup> Express by Pres. Part. **ovans** and **gratulans**.

---

## LESSON VIII.

### TRANSLATING THE THOUGHT.

#### 32. You are always translating ideas, not words.

From your introductory book you will have already learned a great many words of all parts of speech that stand for corresponding words in English. You must at once be on your guard against carrying this principle too far in your rendering of English into Latin. As soon as you get out of the range of simple ideas, whether names, qualities, acts, states, or relations, you get into a region where every word must be scrutinized to see whether it be not used in a sense quite different from its original one. Any ordinary piece of English prose is almost certain to contain a number of words used not in a literal, but a metaphorical sense. It is the real, plain, simple meaning you must discover and translate accordingly.

Familiar illustrations of this principle are :—

He ascended the throne.	} <b>regnum excēpit.</b>
He came to the throne.	
He received the crown.	

**solium ascendit** = He climbed up a throne.

**coronam accepit** = He received a garland.

He took his departure.      **abiit, profectus est.**

He held his peace.      **conticuit.**

Word was brought.      **nuntiatum est.**

He breathed his last.      **e vitā excessit.**

## 33.

A word in English may have a variety of meanings. Its meaning will determine its Latin equivalent. You have already had the word 'country' used in previous exercises in the following different senses :—

## Country—

As opposed to town.	rus.
Native land.	patria.
Lands, territory.	finēs or agri.
State.	civitas, respublica.
Citizens.	cives.

Similarly crown = garland.	corona.
= sovereignty.	regnum, imperium.
field = land.	ager.
= field of battle.	acies, proelium.

A certain man = homo quīdam.

A certain day = dies certus = stated, definite.

Mortal (man) = mortālis.

Mortal (wound) = mortifer = fatal.

For examples of verbs, see 25 and 26.

For example of preposition and conjunction, see Exercise 20 ; 'for.'

## 34.

pacem spēro = I hope for peace. spēro = I hope for.

The Intrans. Verb 'hope' + Preposition 'for' forms a Transitive Verb Phrase.

Examples of this principle are quite numerous :—

I sue for peace	= pacem peto.
He despairs of honors	= honores dēspērat.
You long for an engagement	= optas congressum.
Mountains hem in the canton	= montes pagum continent.
I crave for leisure	= otium dēsīdero.
I listen to	= audio.
I look or wait for	= exspecto.
I send for	= arcesso.

## 35.

Never conclude that a Latin word from which an English word is manifestly derived is its equivalent in meaning. Many of such words were imported into English through Norman-French, and owing to the channels through which they passed, the English word generally differs in meaning from its Latin etymological equivalent.

## As : Nouns—

Crime— <i>scelus, flagitium, culpa.</i>	<i>crimen</i> —a charge.
Merit— <i>virtus.</i>	<i>meritum</i> —a service.
Nation— <i>civitas, populus, res publica, cives.</i>	<i>natio</i> —a tribe.
Office— <i>magistratus.</i>	<i>officium</i> —duty.
Ruin— <i>perniciēs, interitus.</i>	<i>ruīna</i> —fall, crash.

## Adjectives—

Fatal— <i>funestus, perniciosus.</i>	<i>fātālis</i> —fated, destined.
Famous— <i>praeclārus.</i>	<i>fāmosus</i> —notorious, infamous.
Secure (safe)— <i>incolumis, tūtus.</i>	<i>sēcūrus</i> —free from care.
Vile— <i>turpis.</i>	<i>vīlis</i> —cheap.

## Verbs—

Abhor— <i>detestari.</i>	<i>abhorrēre</i> —shrink from, be widely different from.
Acquire— <i>parare, adipisci, consequi.</i>	<i>acquirēre</i> —gain in addition.
Attain to— <i>pervenire ad, consequi.</i>	<i>attinēre ad</i> —touch at.
Obtain— <i>parare.</i>	<i>obtinēre</i> —hold on to, retain.
Oppress— <i>vexare.</i>	<i>opprimēre</i> —crush.

## EXERCISE XVIII.

1. The Britons live on milk and flesh.
2. In boyhood he lived in the city. He died in the country at the age<sup>1</sup> of seventy.
3. Suddenly the tower began to move. Then the enemy in terror<sup>2</sup> at once surrendered.
4. For three days Caesar waited in vain for the arrival of the legions. On the fourth he moved his camp to the foot of the hill. Suddenly a large multitude of the savages<sup>3</sup> assembled in front of the camp. He determined to send for<sup>4</sup> the cavalry.



5. The forces of the enemy were increasing daily. At midday they made a fierce attack on our right wing. Two centurions received mortal wounds.
6. He was a bitter<sup>5</sup> enemy to me. I forgive him this fault.
7. The messengers turned away<sup>6</sup> and the general went back into his tent.

---

<sup>1</sup> At the age of seventy = born seventy years. <sup>2</sup> in terror = terrified = **perterritus**.  
<sup>3</sup> savage = **barbarus**. <sup>4</sup> send for = summon = **arcesso**, 3, **ivi**, **itus**. <sup>5</sup> bitter enemy = superlative of **inimicus**. <sup>6</sup> avertor, **ti**, **versus**. See Art. 26.

### EXERCISE XIX.

1. The country is always very pleasing to children born in the city.
2. Brave soldiers are willing (**volo**) to die for their country.
3. The treacherous generals led their men off (**ex**) the field.
4. All men crave for leisure. The whole world now longs for peace.
5. The soldiers placed the crown on the head of their leader.
6. At the age of twenty he ascended the throne.
7. For two years he held (**obtineo**) the sovereign power of the country.
8. He is aiming at distinctions to which he will never attain.
9. On account of his great services he was loved by the whole country.
10. On account of his disgraceful life he never attained to an office in his country.
11. On that fatal day your country ceased to be free.
12. I was waiting for you at home, but looked in vain for your return.
13. Your riches increase daily, but they do not increase your leisure.
14. For ten years they had carried on a bloody war, and at last were suing for peace.
15. For three days Caesar waited for the arrival of the cavalry, on the fourth he began to despair of aid.

To be mistress of.	<b>impero</b> , 1.
Leisure.	<b>ōtium</b> .
Aim at.	<b>peto</b> .
Distinction.	<b>honōs</b> , <b>ōris</b> .
Bloody.	<b>cruentus</b> .

### EXERCISE XX.

Translate the simple thought of all metaphorical expressions.

Silence reigned (was) throughout<sup>1</sup> the whole camp. For<sup>2</sup> the soldiers were waiting for the signal for battle. "Fight bravely for your country and gods," said (**inquit**) the general, "and you will to-day give<sup>3</sup> freedom to your country. If you hold<sup>4</sup> out against the first

attack of the enemy, the day is<sup>5</sup> ours. If you do<sup>4</sup> not conquer, you will all be put to the sword.” Many on that day gave their lives for their country. Two lieutenants were fatally<sup>6</sup> wounded, but met<sup>7</sup> death like men. Ten thousand of the enemy were slain; the rest took to flight. The victorious general at once set out for the city.

---

<sup>1</sup>Express by simple Abl. <sup>2</sup>for, conjunction=**nam**, first word, or **enim**, second word.  
<sup>3</sup>To free=**liberare** or **in libertatem vindicare**. <sup>4</sup>Tense? <sup>5</sup>We have conquered.  
<sup>6</sup>received fatal (**mortifer**) wounds. <sup>7</sup>**mortem obire**, or **oppetere**.

---

## LESSON IX.

### 36. DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM—THE NOUN.

The noun is a far more expressive word in English than in Latin. In Latin the verb is the expressive word, the word in which the thought of the sentence is concentrated.

English prose abounds in abstract and general terms for which Latin has no direct equivalent. Of course, where the quality itself is specified in the abstract, an abstract noun is used in Latin as in English. In your translation of Latin into idiomatic English you must constantly be rendering the thought of an adjective, verb form, clause, or even adverb, in Latin, by a noun in English.

A few examples will suffice to illustrate a principle to which we will be constantly recurring.

He spoke the truth, his words were true.	<b>vērā dixit.</b>
Obedience to law is the part of wisdom.	<b>sapientis est lēgibus parēre.</b>
The battle was long and stubborn.	<b>diū et acriter pugnatum est.</b>
Permission was given you to go.	<b>tibi ire licuit.</b>
His hopes were high.	<b>magnā sperabat.</b>
Lying is disgraceful.	<b>turpe est mentiri.</b>
Good writing.	<b>bene scribere.</b>
In spite of your opposition.	<b>te repugnante. (Abl. Abs.)</b>
Having obtained this request.	<b>hāc rē impetratā. (Abl. Abs.)</b>

The word ‘**res**,’ so frequently employed in Latin as a mere word of reference—‘a blank check to be filled in with the requisite amount of meaning’—must be translated according to the context, rarely by the word ‘thing.’

After the grant of citizenship.

They ascertained the number of the enemy.

My father's murderers.

Your safety was my aim.

With a wise moderation.

post dātam civitatem.

cognoverunt quot essent hostes.

(Dependent Interrogative).

qui patrem meum occiderunt.

id ēgi ut salvus esses.

mōdice ac sapienter.

### EXERCISE XXI.

(a) Adapt to Roman mode of thought.

(b) Translate.

1. He told many falsehoods about his age.
2. Panic reigned throughout the whole city.
3. On the third day the river was reached.
4. The battle raged fiercely along the whole line.
5. The loss of the Athenians was twenty-five vessels.
6. His repentance for his cowardice came too late.
7. It was their duty to conquer or die.
8. His reply was very brief.
9. Brave fighting will to-day be the same as victory.
10. His prayer was for peace and friendship.
11. A meeting of the allies was then convened.
12. They were granted permission to leave the camp.
13. His pardon was impossible.
14. Such confidence had Caesar in his veterans.
15. Mercy was shown to the prisoners.
16. The surrender of the city took place in the eighth month after the beginning of the siege.
17. Obedience to their masters befits slaves.
18. Your safety will be my chief concern.
19. The gods are my protectors.
20. Intelligence of this event was at once brought to Caesar.
21. His address to his companions was long and earnest.
22. He never trusted his accusers.
23. He inflicted punishment on his friend's murderers.
24. The passage of the river was by no means easy.
25. Giving is better than receiving.

Lie, tell falsehood	= <b>mentior, 4.</b>
Panic reigned	= <b>trepidatum est.</b>
Earnestly	= <b>vehementer.</b>
Inflict punishment on	= <b>poenas sumere de.</b>

## LESSON X.

37.

## ORDER OF WORDS.

## ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

A number of Latin words, written without due regard to the proper order, is no more a Latin sentence in thought and structure than a number of English words, written without due regard to thought and connection, is English.

‘Caesar postero die Titum Labienum legatum, cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit,’ translated literally, word for word, according to the Latin order, would not be English at all. So also, ‘Caesar misit Titum Labienum postero die in Morinos qui fecerant rebellionem cum iis legionibus quas reduxerat ex Britannia,’ is not Latin at all. Even the sense of the original has been destroyed. A number of rooms, though different in character, built separately from each other and without any mutual connection and adjustment of parts, would not constitute a house. No more do a number of clauses and phrases, strung together without any mutual connection and adjustment, constitute a Latin sentence. From the very first, strict attention must be paid to the proper Latin order even in simple sentences.

You must think in Latin, as the Romans thought. This is not only essential for your knowledge of the language, but constitutes one of the very best means of mental discipline, inasmuch as it trains you to mentally grasp in its entirety the thought to be expressed. You will be enabled to do this the more easily by constant practice at oral translation of exercises which you have already written, and in reading Latin always strive to read it intelligently, reading it not as so many separate words, but as so many clauses or phrases representing so many component parts of a single idea. *Romani (urbem Troiam) (decem annos) (ob unam mulierem) (oppugnaverunt)*, should not be considered as nine words, but as five separate parts of one idea, and should be recited accordingly.

The distinguishing excellencies of Latin composition are simplicity, clearness, dignity, force, nicety of adjustment of words and phrases, logical structure, sonorous cadence and rhythmic charm.

To attain any approach to the excellence of the great masters, constant observation and application are necessary. No application of formal rules can take the place of close study of the great originals. No definite set of rules can be given to meet the combined requirements of connection, emphasis, harmony, variety and grace. A close analysis of a few chosen chapters of Caesar, Livy, or Cicero, with a view to discovering the results produced, and the means and methods by which such results are produced, will be of far more benefit than the memorizing of given rules.

We have already noticed (14 and 15) the fundamental rules underlying the order of words in the simple sentence. Such rules are given more with a view to direct and stimulate the student's observation while he is reading his authors, than with the idea that they are of any great value in themselves. With the same object in view the following further illustrations and hints on the same subject are added.

### 38.

(a) *Pavor Numidarum — Romanis iam admodum fessis — victoriam — dedit.*

(b) *Caesar imperator Romanus — Labieno legato fortissimo — legionem vere primo in Italia conscriptam — dedit.*

(c) *His rebus cognitis — Caesar, imperator Romanus, cum vereretur ut pontem conficere posset — Labieno legato, qui pridie redierat — tres legiones proxime in Gallia conscriptas — dedit — — ne hostes, cum ad castra venissent, commeatu nostros prohiberent.*

Review (14 and 15) and compare with the following general rule for order of words and clauses in a 'period.'

I. Introductory word, phrase or clause indicating connection with previous sentence.

II. Subject and words or clauses immediately or logically connected with it.

III. Words or clauses expressing time, place, manner, motive, etc.

IV. Indirect object and words or clauses connected with it.

V. Direct object and words or clauses connected with it.

VI. Principal verb.



## 39.

Subordinate clauses—Temporal—Causal—Conditional—Concessive, etc., usually come before the principal verb, but Final clauses frequently, and Indirect questions, Indirect narration and Consecutive clauses generally come *after the principal clause*. The reason is that they contain the more important thought, the purpose or result of an act often being more important than the act itself, and the question or statement more important than the mere fact of asking or making it.

- (i) The rules of order that apply to simple principal sentences apply also to subordinate, participial and infinitive clauses.
- (ii) Negatives stand before the words which they qualify ; if the wish is to negative the whole thought, the negative word stands as near as possible to the beginning. Hence the frequency with which sentences begin with *nec quisquam*, *nec vero*, and for the same reason *nego* and *nolo* frequently stand at the beginning of a sentence.

doleo non me tuis litteris certiorum fieri.

neque ipsi Lacedaemonii castris potiri potuerunt.

- (iii) Contrasted words are placed as near as possible to each other.

sublato tyranno, tyrannida manere video.

ut ad senem senex de senectute sic hoc libro ad amicum amicissimus de amicitia scripsi.

- (iv) Avoid if possible two or more finite verbs belonging to different clauses following each other.
- (v) The verb of an explanatory clause introduced by *enim* or *autem* stands first.

Quae res unquam gesta est tanta ? licet enim mihi apud te gloriari.

## LESSON XI.

## PARTICIPLES.

## 40. Active.

Present, loving.

amans.

Perfect, having loved.

Future, about to love.

amātūrus.

**Passive.**

Present, being loved.

Perfect, having been loved. **amātus.**

Future, about to be loved.

Latin has no Perfect Part. Active.

no Present Part. Passive.

no Future Part. Passive.

**41.** The **Pres. Part. Act., amans**, denotes time **contemporaneous** with that of the leading verb.

**amans** = While in the act of loving.**pater dēcēdens haec dixit.** At the time of his departure.It must **not** be used as an **adjective**.

A fighting man.

**vir pugnax.****vir pugnans.**

A man while in the act of fighting.

A lying slave.

**servus mendax.**

Some participles have acquired such an adjectival force, but the real participle has no such meaning.

**42.** The **Future Active Part., amaturus**, denotes both **futurity** and **intention**.

**pugnaturus.**About to, going to, intending to,  
likely to fight.**pugnaturi sumus.**

We intend to fight.

**pugnaturi eramus.**

We intended to fight.

**43.** Latin has **no Perfect Part. Active** (having loved).

Only **Deponent** verbs have a **perf. part.** with an **active** meaning.

**mīrātus**—having admired; **veritus**—having feared;**secūtus**—having followed.

A very common mode of meeting the want of a Perfect Part. Active is to use an **Ablative Absolute** with the Perf. Part. Pass.

- (a) Having taken the city, the enemy scattered.  
*urbe captā, hostes discesserunt.* You can also say :  
*cum urbem cēpissent,*  
*postquam (ubi, ut) urbem cēperunt,*

- (b) Having come—*cum venisset.*  
*postquam (ubi) vēnit.*

In the case of intransitive verbs for which there is no equivalent deponent you are limited to these two modes of expression.

- (c) Having set out—*profectus.*  
*cum profectus esset.*  
*postquam (ubi) profectus est.*

There are, therefore, in all *four substitutes for a perfect part. act.*

- Having spoken these words—(1) *his dictis.*  
 (2) *haec locūtus.*  
 (3) *cum haec dixisset, or locutus esset.*  
 (4) *postquam (ubi) haec dixit, or locutus est.*

The following period from Livy xxii, 20, is remarkable as illustrating within itself these four constructions. The student will observe from this extract, as from others, how variety is gained and a monotonous structure avoided by the interchange in the construction :—

*Ibi urbe, quae caput insulae est, biduum nequicquam summo labore oppugnatā, ubi in spem irritam frustra teri tempus animadversum est, ad populationem agri versi, direptis aliquot incensisque vicis, maiore quam ex continenti praedā partā, cum in naves se recepissent, ex Baliaribus insulis legati pacem petentes ad Scipionem venerunt.*

#### 44.

Similarly, *being loved* = since or when (he) is or was loved.  
*being about to be loved* = since or when (he) is or was about to be loved.  
 and must be rendered by some equivalent periphrasis.

#### 45.

Calling together the soldiers, he attacked the enemy.  
*militibus convocatis, hostes aggressus est.*

English frequently uses a *Present Part.*, denoting *Past Time*.

The logical exactness of Latin does not allow this.

The absurdities resulting from the translation of the English present part. by the Latin present part. will be quite apparent.

#### 46.

Believing the capture of the city to be easy, they made an immediate assault,

**cum crederent se facile urbem esse capturos, impetum statim fecerunt.**

In English the *Present Part. Active* may be *Causal* (used to express a Reason). In Latin it is not so used except in the case of the Abl. Absolute.

The Perf. Part. of a few *Deponent* verbs from their frequent use approach this use of the English present part.

fearing—**veritus** ; thinking—**arbitratus, ratus** ; daring—**ausus**.  
So **confisus, usus, progressus, conversus, proiectus** (throwing himself), **secutus**.

### EXERCISE XXII.

1. I hear you speaking. He saw the enemy fleeing. We shall see him departing for Greece.
2. Fearing an ambush, he retreated into the camp.
3. On reaching the river, he saw the forces of the enemy drawn up on the opposite (**alter**) bank.
4. On the same day the ambassadors, sent by the enemy to Caesar to treat for (**de**) peace, arrived.
5. The Morini, whom Caesar on his departure to Britain had left at peace, led on by the hope of booty, attacked our men while they were returning to camp.
6. Suddenly attacking our men while fortifying their camp, they threw them into disorder.
7. After advancing about seven miles, they turned back again.
8. Throwing themselves at his feet, they made a long speech.
9. Turning to his friends, he conversed (with them) long about the future.
10. With these words he left the senate-house.
11. Having got possession of the throne, he put to death many leaders of the state.
12. (As he was) about to die, he saluted the King.
13. He praised the soldiers while bravely resisting the attack of the enemy.

14. Our men found many thousands of the enemy devastating the fields of the allies.
15. The cavalry, while returning to camp, cut down many of the enemy.
16. Caesar beheld Ambiorix in the distance exhorting his men.
17. Turning away, the general went back into his tent.

Ambush.	insidiae, arum.
Retreat.	se recipere.
Draw up.	instruo, 3, uxi, uctus.
At peace.	pācātus.
Throw into disorder.	perturbo, 1.
Senate-house.	cūria, ae.

## LESSON XII

### IDIOMS.

#### 47. Sentence-Structure.

His dimissis et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo, et sublatiis ancoris, circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus, aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

The officers were then sent to their various posts; and now as wind and tide were both favourable at one and the same time, he gave the signal, weighed anchor, and after proceeding about seven miles from that point, moored his ships on an open and level shore.

Observe in the above extract:—

There are five participles and one principal verb.

The different movements are stated in the order of their occurrence.

The one principal subject is maintained throughout.

Cum iis Adcantuannus eruptionem facere conatus, clamore ab ea parte munitionis sublato, cum ad arma milites concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnatum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen, uti eadem deditionis conditione uteretur, ab Crasso impetravit.

Observe:—

There are three participles, three subordinate verbs and one principal verb.

The natural order of the events is maintained.



The one principal subject, 'Adcantuannus,' is maintained throughout.

With these followers Ad. attempted to make a sally. A warning shout was raised from that part of the fortification, and the soldiers rushed to arms. A fierce battle ensued, and Ad. was driven back into the town. Notwithstanding this, he obtained from Crassus the privilege of enjoying the same terms of surrender.

The above examples exemplify the radical difference between Latin and English idiom in general, and particularly in *descriptive* and *narrative* prose.

Latin expresses only the principal verbal idea by a principal verb, and uses participles and subordinate constructions for the less important ideas.

English does not so differentiate the verbal ideas.

Latin loves to choose out the leading thought and group others around it in subordinate constructions.

English does not so consider the relative importance of thoughts.

Latin uses many participles and subordinate verbs, and few principal verbs.

English uses few participles and subordinate verbs, and many principal verbs.

Latin descriptive and narrative style is based on the principle of subordination.

English is based on the principle of co-ordination.

This style, the Latin, is known as the **Periodic**. A sentence so written is called a **Period**.

#### 48. Idioms in Connection with Participles.

The following idioms are quite commonly employed :—

(a) They took the city and committed it to the flames. **urbem captam incenderunt.**

He attacked and dislodged the enemy. **hostes aggressus, deturbavit.**

(b) After the founding of the city. **post urbem conditam.** After the city founded.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| The rout of the army.                    | <b>exercitus fūsus.</b>                 |
| The report of the disaster.              | <b>nuntiātā clādēs.</b>                 |
| (c) The shouts of the combatants.        | <b>pugnantium clāmōres.</b>             |
| To my question he made this answer.      | <b>mihi interroganti hoc respondit.</b> |
| Tears of mourning.                       | <b>lugentium lacrimae.</b>              |
| Shouts of congratulation.                | <b>gratulantium clamores.</b>           |
| His dying words.                         | <b>vox eius morientis.</b>              |
| His words of encouragement.              | <b>adhortantis verba.</b>               |
| (d) We do not spare those who resist us. | <b>non parcimus resistantibus.</b>      |
| Those doing this will be punished.       | <b>qui hoc facient, poenas dabunt.</b>  |

## EXERCISE XXIII.

1. They surrounded the legion and put it to the sword.
2. Seize the man and slay him.
3. They slew and despoiled the leader.
4. He lived for twenty-five years after the death of his father.
5. The murder of Caesar seemed to many to be a splendid achievement (**pulcherrimum facinus**).
6. After the capture and plunder of the camp, the enemy retreated across the river.
7. Are you not ashamed of the abandonment of your undertaking, the desertion of your friend, and the violation of your word?
8. To our complaint they made no reply.
9. The shouts of victory were heard in the city.
10. His children saw his dying countenance and heard their mother's words of sorrow.
11. His words of encouragement could not be heard above the shouts of joy and triumph.
12. He never spared those resisting him.

Seize.	<b>comprehendo, 3, di, sus.</b>
Despoil.	<b>spōlio, I.</b>
Undertaking.	<b>inceptum, i.</b>
Word . . . good faith.	<b>fides, ei.</b>
Complain.	<b>quēror, 3, questus.</b>
Countenance.	<b>vultus, ūs.</b>
Grieve.	<b>doleo, 2, ui.</b>
Above.	<b>prae, with abl.</b>
To be joyful.	<b>laetor, I.</b>
Triumph.	<b>triumpho, I.</b>

## LESSON XIII.

## 49. Ablative—Absolute.

In Latin the Ablative is used as the Case Absolute. The relations of time, cause, manner, circumstances, etc., denoted by the Abl. Abs., are ablative relations.

Absolute means *independent*; an ablative absolute phrase is *grammatically independent* of the rest of the sentence.

The ablative absolute phrase may be variously composed and should be translated according to the context. It may express time, cause, condition, concession or circumstances.

In the consulship of Caesar.	Caesare consule.
In your consulship.	te consule.
Against Caesar's (my) wish.	Caesare (me) invito.
Provided he remains.	illo manente.
In spite of your resistance.	te repugnante.
If the enemy be defeated.	hostibus superatis.
On hearing this.	his rebus auditis.
In the midst of my speech.	hoc me dicente.

This construction is so common and useful in Latin prose that the examples should be thoroughly mastered.

At my suggestion.	me auctore.
Without violating the law.	salvis legibus.
Without your aid.	te non adiuvante.
Without success.	re infectâ.
Without waiting for any guide.	nullo exspectato duce.
Without opposition on the part of the enemy.	nullo hoste prohibente.
Without the general's knowledge.	insciente imperatore.
With strength undiminished.	integris viribus.

## 50. Limitations to the use of the Ablative Absolute.

(a) After taking the city, they *urbem captam incenderunt*.  
fired it.

Having been elected consul, *consul creatus urbe excessit*.  
he left the city.

A noun or pronoun **cannot be in abl. abs.**, if already the subject or object of another verb.

- (b) On reaching the river, Caesar fortified the camp. *Caesar, cum ad flumen pervēnisset, castra munīvit.*

Review 43 (b).

Caesar having been persuaded. *Caesari cum persuāsum esset.*

Review 24.

- (c) It need not be used in cases where it might. Review 43 (c) and 48 (b).

Having spoken thus.

*his dictis or haec lōcūtus.*

After the capture of the camp. *castris captis or post castra capta.*

The Abl. Abs. is nearly always placed at or near the beginning of the sentence.

In the periodic style it is used very frequently at the beginning of sentences to keep up the connection of the thought and to clear the ground for the expression of more important thoughts.

## EXERCISE XXIV

Translate as ablative absolutes.

In the reign of Tiberius. When I was a boy. On the advice of the enemy. Even (*vel*) though the consuls are unwilling. Without receiving an answer from anyone. Under our leadership. After all preparations had been made. Without the knowledge of Caesar. At the request of the Aedui. Without even giving hostages. Though the defenders were few. While our men were coming up (*succedo*). In the presence of his own army. In spite of much opposition. In Caesar's absence.

## EXERCISE XXV.

1. Caesar, having been elected consul, immediately set out for Gaul.
2. On the election of Caesar as consul, Cicero despaired of the republic.
3. When we were boys we often walked through the fields.
4. Drawing his sword, he charged into the enemy.
5. On the return of the cavalry to the camp, Caesar without further delay, set out by forced marches into the territory of the Remi.
6. Caesar in his consulship conquered many tribes in Gaul.
7. Some, being wounded, withdrew from the battle, others with strength undiminished took their places.
8. After laying waste everything far and wide, the soldiers returned to the camp.
9. It was at your suggestion and in spite of my brother's opposition that I joined the popular party.

10. While our men were fearing nothing, the enemy made an attack and quickly threw the cavalry into confusion.
11. Cicero after his expulsion from Rome sailed to Greece.
12. After Cicero's expulsion from Rome, many despaired of the republic.

Draw (sword).

Charge into.

Popular party.

*stringo*, 3, *nxi*, *ctus*.

*invādēre in* ; *impetum facere in*.

*populāres*, *ium*.

### EXERCISE XXVI.

Translate, using only one principal verb.

1. The Germans, hearing a shout in their rear, threw away their arms and rushed out of the camp.
2. On reaching the Rhine they despaired of further flight, and threw themselves into the river.
3. Having provided a corn supply and increased the number of the legions, he marched into the districts in which the Germans were.
4. On being informed of these facts, and fearing the treachery of the Gauls, he brought back his legions from Britain.
5. On learning the plan of the Romans, the barbarians sent forward their cavalry, and following closely with the rest of their forces, tried to prevent our men from landing from their ships.
6. Suddenly attacking our men while scattered, and with their guns (*arma*) laid aside, they slew a few and put the rest to flight.
7. After our cavalry came in sight, the enemy threw away their arms and fled into the woods.
8. Without waiting for any command, the soldiers drew their swords and leapt down from the rampart.
9. After the defeat of Brutus and Cassius, many, amid the universal despair of the citizens, went into exile.
10. Cicero, after living in exile for one year, returned to Rome amid universal rejoicing.
11. After thus defeating all the forces of the enemy, destroying their towns, and laying waste their fields, our general led back his men into camp.
12. Inasmuch as the enemy offered a stout resistance, our men, after pitching their camp on a high hill, waited for reinforcements.

Rush out.

Inform.

Leap down.

Rejoice.

*se ēicere*.

*certiorem facere*.

*dēsilio*, 4, *ui*.

*laetor*, 1 ; *gaudeo*, 2, *gāvīsus*.



## EXERCISE XXVII.

## Participles and Verb Forms.

What are the variable translations for the Pf. Part. (active form) of

A. An Intrans. verb for which there is no equivalent deponent?

1. Having reached the camp at daybreak, he found everything ready.
2. Having lived many years at Capua, he was a great friend to Marcellus.

B. An Intrans. verb for which there is an equivalent deponent?

1. Having advanced to the river, he saw the enemy's forces drawn up on the other bank. Advance—**prōcēdo** ; **prōgredior**.
2. Having come forth from the senate-house, he convened the plebs in the forum. Come forth—**exeo** ; **ēgredior**.

C. A Trans. verb for which there is no equivalent deponent?

1. Having led his army across, he at once fortified a camp.
2. Having written the letter, he left the house and committed suicide.

D. A Trans. verb for which there is an equivalent deponent?

1. Having devastated the fields of the Remi, he returned to camp. Devastate—**vasto** ; **dēpōpŭlor**, 1.
2. Having observed the Roman standards in the distance, the barbarians desist from the siege. Observe—**conspicio** ; **conspicor**, 1.

E. A verb that governs the dative?

1. Having persuaded his friend, he left the assembly.
2. Having been persuaded by his friend, he set out to Delphi.
3. Having resisted the enemy for two hours, the soldiers were at last forced to surrender.
4. Having been pardoned by the judge, he ought to have lived better.

F. Observe the difference :—

Caesar in Italiam **prōficiscens**, Labienum legionibus praeficit.

Caesar, ab castris prima luce **prōfectus**, ad flumen ante meridiem pervenit.

1. Observing the Roman army in the distance, the enemy fled into the woods.
2. Obtaining suitable weather at last, Caesar set sail with all his ships.
3. Entering the harbor at midnight, he waited for the rest of the fleet.

G. The Perf. Participles of certain deponent verbs are of very frequent occurrence and should be thoroughly familiar to the student.

Give the principal parts and the meaning of

**prō-**, **ē -**, **in-**, **rē-**, **ag-**, **trans-**, **con-gredior** ; **con-**, **rē-vertor** ; **adipiscor**, **consequor** ; **polliceor** ; **patior** ; **expērior** ; **nanciscor** ; **obliscor** ; **irascor**, **mōrior** ; **nascor** ; **suspīcor** ; **adōrior** ; **mōror** ; **cunctor** ; and the semi-deponents **audeo**, **confido** ; **diffido**.

**H.** Translate as Pres. Participles on the understanding that they agree

(a) With a noun sing. nom.

1. At the time of his departure ; while exhorting ; while returning ; during his attempt ; while observing ; on his death-bed.

(b) With a noun pl. nom.

2. While returning ; while entering ; in their flight ; during their retreat.

**I.** 'On his death-bed' might require the fut. part. When? What is it?

**J.** Give the Deponent pf. part. to represent the following, on the understanding that they denote past time and agree with a noun pl. nom.

Following ; after promising ; setting out ; fearing ; suspecting ; after attempting ; following closely ; daring ; trusting ; distrusting ; turning to their friends ; turning back ; advancing ; entering ; issuing ; engaging ; attacking ; using ; gaining possession of ; observing ; having delayed ; after devastating.

- K.** 1. At the age of twenty they joined the army.  
 2. After their death we praise them.  
 3. Having obtained the crown in boyhood, he reigned for thirty years.  
 4. After many trials, they at last got across the river.  
 5. After trying every device (all things), they at last turned back home.

**L.** 'Fearing' when it is causal = since he was afraid = **veritus** or **cum timeret**.

Translate as having a causal force :—Believing ; seeing ; thinking ; observing ; hoping ; perceiving (**animadverto**) ; knowing ; not knowing ; not being able to ascertain ; taking advantage of the darkness.

**M.** Observe the difference :—

**cum aciem instruxisset, hostes rēfūgērunt.**

**cum aciem instrueret, hostes subito in conspectum vēnērunt.**

The Plupf. denotes time *antecedent to* } that of the princi-  
 The Impf. denotes time *contemporaneous with* } pal verb.

1. When Caesar had come up (**accēdo**) to the town and was pitching his camp there, the women and children sought peace from the Romans.

2. After they had gathered (**confero**) all their (effects) into the town, and Caesar was distant from it with his army about five miles, all the elders, issuing from the town, began to sue for peace.
3. When about three hundred soldiers had been landed (**expōno**) from these ships and were proceeding into camp, the Morini, whom Caesar at the time of his departure for Britain had left at peace (**pācātus**) surrounded (them) with a great host of their men.
4. When the Treveran cavalry were coming to Caesar, they heard of this battle and turned back home again.
5. On their arrival home, they reported these things to their senate.
6. While they were marching through the country of the Remi, they routed a large force of cavalry over which Crassus was in command. After making a march of three days without any danger, they were surrounded in the mountains and all perished.
- N. 'While,' introducing a subordinate clause and indicating 'pure time,' is '**dum**.'
1. While Scipio is delaying at the sea, Hannibal was already crossing the Alps.
2. While these things are going on, the ambassador, Fabius, returned from Delphi to Rome.

---

## LESSON XIV.

### 51. CONSISTENCY OF LATIN STYLE.

- (a) Although *Caesar* was not yet aware of their plans, nevertheless *he* posted his legions in line of battle before the camp.

**Caesar, etsi nondum consilia eorum cognoverat, tamen lēgiōnes in acie pro castris constituit.**

- (b) When the plan of the Romans became known *to the barbarians*, *they* tried to prevent our men from landing.

**Barbari, consilio Romanorum cognito, nostros navibus ēgrēdi prohibebant.**

- (c) When Crito asked *Socrates* for his opinion, *he* replied.

**Socrates, a Critone sententiam rōgātus, respondit.**

- (d) This request was granted; and on being ordered to hand over their arms, they do so.

**Quā re impetratā, arma tradere iussi, faciunt.**

- (e) When *he* had landed from the ship and was delivering to them the orders of his commander, they had thrown *him* into chains.

Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos imperatoris mandata  
perferret, in vincula coniecerant.

(f) The *latter* was in turn surrounded, but Pulio brings *him* aid.

Huic rursus circumvento fert subsidium Pulio.

These sentences illustrate the **compactness, brevity and consistency of Latin style**, as compared with the English.

Compare 47—His dimissis, etc., and cum iis Adcantuannus, etc.

Latin, as far as possible, throughout the period or sentence

- (a) Makes the real subject the grammatical subject of the principal verb.
- (b) Avoids change of subject.
- (c) Places the subject at or near the beginning, thereby giving emphasis and prominence to it.
- (d) Keeps a substantive in the same case.

Owing to the necessity of keeping up a close connection between sentences—a feature of Latin prose, which an examination of any chapter in Caesar, Cicero or Livy will reveal—the logical subject of the sentence is sometimes not the grammatical subject, as in examples (e) and (f). A writer is thus enabled to use the Active Voice, which is far more direct and expressive than the Passive Voice.

### EXERCISE XXVIII.

1. When Galba received these tidings, he immediately called a council and began to ask the lieutenants for their opinions.
2. These matters were quickly attended to, and as soon as he could, he set out in person to the army.
3. When the lieutenant asked the guides about the roads, they gave a false reply.
4. Believing that the rest of the Roman army was close behind (*subsequi*), Ambiorix determined to seek refuge in the woods.
5. At any rate, sending messengers through the country, he bade everyone look out for himself (*sibi consulere*).
6. Scipio had already set out from his camp when news was brought to him of the capture of the town.

### EXERCISE XXIX.

#### A.—A PERIOD.

Flaminius had reached the lake at sunset the day before. On the morrow without reconnoitring, and while the light was still uncertain<sup>2</sup>,

he traversed the narrow<sup>3</sup> pass. As the army began to deploy<sup>4</sup> into the widening<sup>5</sup> plain, he saw only that part of the enemy's forces which was in front of him<sup>6</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> *inexplorato*. <sup>2</sup> The light being scarcely yet (*vixdum*) sufficiently certain (*certus*). <sup>3</sup> *angustiae, arum*. <sup>4</sup> pass. of *pando*. <sup>5</sup> More open (*patens*). <sup>6</sup> *ex adverso*.

#### B.—A PERIOD.

While these events are happening in Italy, Cneius Cornelius Scipio had been despatched with a fleet and an army to Spain. He started from the mouth<sup>1</sup> of the Rhone, sailed round<sup>2</sup> the Pyrenees<sup>3</sup> and brought<sup>4</sup> his fleet to anchor<sup>4</sup> at<sup>5</sup> Emporiae. He disembarked his army there, and beginning<sup>6</sup> with (*ab*) the Lacetani, he brought the whole coast right up to<sup>7</sup> the river Ebro<sup>8</sup> under Roman sway<sup>9</sup>, partly by renewing (68 *d*) (old) alliances<sup>10</sup> (and) partly by forming<sup>11</sup> new (ones).

<sup>1</sup> *ostium*. <sup>2</sup> *circumvehor* with Acc. <sup>3</sup> *Montes Pyrenaei*. <sup>4</sup> *appello*, 3, *puli, pulsus*. <sup>5</sup> Locative case. <sup>6</sup> *ordior*, 4, *orsus*. <sup>7</sup> *usque ad*. <sup>8</sup> *Hiberus*. <sup>9</sup> to bring under Roman sway—*Romanæ dicionis facere*. <sup>10</sup> *societas, atis*. <sup>11</sup> *instituo*.

#### C.—A PERIOD

Cativolcus, King of the half<sup>1</sup> of the Eburones, had<sup>2</sup> entered into the plot along with Ambiorix. He was now far advanced in years<sup>3</sup> and unable to endure the toil involved in<sup>4</sup> either war or flight. Cursing<sup>5</sup> Ambiorix with all (manner of) imprecations<sup>6</sup> because<sup>7</sup> he had been the prime<sup>8</sup> mover in the plot, he took his<sup>9</sup> own life with poison of<sup>10</sup> the yew-tree, of which there is great abundance in Gaul and Germany.

<sup>1</sup> *dimidia pars*. <sup>2</sup> Use a relative clause. <sup>3</sup> *aetate confectus*. <sup>4</sup> toil of war. <sup>5</sup> *detestor*, I. <sup>6</sup> (*prex*) *precis*. <sup>7</sup> Use relative with subjunctive. <sup>8</sup> *auctor*. <sup>9</sup> *se exanimare*. <sup>10</sup> *taxus*, i.

### LESSON XV.

52.

#### THE INFINITIVE.

The five chief uses of the infinitive are :—

(a) As a Substantive :

*Humanum est errare.*

*Vidēre est credēre.*

Seeing is believing.

(b) In exclamations :

*mene incepto desistere  
victam.*

That I should abandon my purpose,  
vanquished.



(c) With modal verbs. (27).

(d) Historic Infinitive used instead of a finite verb to vividly describe rapid movements :

**interim quotidie Caesar Aeduos** Meanwhile Caesar was daily de-  
**frumentum flagitare.** manding grain of the Aedui.

(e) In Acc. with Infin. construction :

**dixit urbem captam esse.** He said the city had been taken.

### 53. ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

In English we say either :—

I know that he is a good man ; or

I know him to be a good man.

Latin uses only the latter construction :

**scio eum esse virum bonum.**

It is called Accusative with Infinitive.

It is used after verbs of saying, hearing, thinking, believing, knowing, feeling (*verba sentiendi et declarandi*), and such expressions as, it is certain, manifest, true, etc.

### 54.

*Oratio Recta* (Direct Narration) is the name given to the form of the sentence when the speaker's own words are quoted.

**‘Veniam,’ inquit Caius.** ‘I will come,’ says Caius.

All indirect reporting, whether of speech or thought, is called *Oratio Obliqua* (Indirect Narration).

**Caius dixit, or putavit se venturum esse.**

Caius said, or thought, that he (himself) would come.

### 55. The Tense of the Infinitive.

Observe the changes that take place in the English, when words are reported.

‘Caesar is coming,’ becomes.

He says that Caesar <i>is</i> coming.	<b>dicit</b>	} <b>Caesarem venire.</b>
He said that Caesar <i>was</i> coming.	<b>dixit</b>	
He will say that Caesar <i>is</i> coming.	<b>dicet</b>	

‘Caesar was coming, has come, came, or had come.’

He says that Caesar was coming, <i>has</i> come, came, or had come.	<b>dicet</b>	} <b>Caesarem vēnisse.</b>
He said that Caesar was coming, <i>had</i> come, came, or had come.	<b>dixit</b>	
He will say that Caesar was coming, <i>has</i> come, came, or had come.	<b>dicet</b>	
‘Caesar will come.’		

He says that Caesar <i>will</i> come.	<b>dicet</b>	} <b>Caesarem venturum esse.</b>
He said that Caesar <i>would</i> come.	<b>dixit</b>	
He will say that Caesar <i>will</i> come.	<b>dicet</b>	

The *Tense of the Infinitive in Latin* will be the Tense of the verb in *Oratio Recta*, the Perf. Infinitive representing the Perfect (both Historic and Pres. Perf.), Imperfect, and Pluperfect Indicative; or, Present Infin. will represent time *contemporaneous with* } that of the  
Perfect Infin. will represent time *prior to* } introducing verb.  
Future Infin. will represent time *subsequent to* }

## 56.

Such expressions as :—

Caesar, he said, was coming ;  
He would not reach the city, he thought ;  
You are, it is plain, mistaken ;  
You will not, I hope, leave the city,

must be expressed by Acc. with Infin. construction.

**dixit Caesarem venire ;**  
**putavit eum ad urbem non perventurum esse ;**  
**manifestum est te errare ;**  
**spero te non ex urbe abiturum esse.**

Occasionally in speaking, a word such as ‘**credo**,’ I presume, is thrown in parenthetically, but the only general exception to the above rule is ‘**inquam**,’ which quotes the exact words used, and is not placed first in the sentence.

## 57.

He *says* he will *not* come. **negat se venturum esse.**

In translating ‘say no’ use *něgo* = *I deny*.

## 58.

Observe from the above examples that the pronoun so often omitted in *Oratio Recta* in Latin must always be inserted in *Oratio Obliqua*.

## 59.

Balbus dicit se hoc fecisse.

Balbus dicit eum hoc fecisse.

Balbus dicit hunc librum esse suum.

Balbus dicit hunc librum esse eius.

He, she, it, they = **se** ; his, her, its, their = **suus**,  
when they refer to the subject of the introducing verb.

He, she, it, they = **is**, or when emphatic, **ille** ; his, her, its, their =  
genitive of **is** or **ille**,  
when they do not refer to the subject of the introducing verb.

## 60.

He hopes to come = he hopes that      **spērat se venturum esse.**  
he will come.

He promises to do it.      **prōmittit se hoc facturum esse.**

With verbs *hope, promise, undertake, threaten, swear,*  
**sperare, promittere** or **polliceri, suscipere, minari, iurare,**  
use **Future Infin. + Acc. of Pronoun.**

Observe that these verbs necessarily refer to the future.

NOTE 1.—The present infin. '**posse**' is often used after **spero.**  
**hoc se facere posse sperat.**

NOTE 2.—The '**esse**' of the future infin. act. and the perfect infin. pass. is very  
often omitted.

## 61.

He pretends to be mad.      **se furēre simulat.**

After '*simulare*,' pretend, the *Acc. of the Pronoun* must be  
inserted.

## 62.

## SPECIAL POINTS.

1. Remember the future infinitive of a deponent verb is of the  
active form.

## 2. Impersonal Infinitives.

He was persuaded.

**ei persuasum est.**

He said that he had been per-  
suaded.

**dixit sibi persuasum esse.**

He says he is envied.

**dicit sibi invidēri.**

The soldiers may leave the camp.

**militibus licet castris exire.**

He says that the soldiers may  
leave the camp.

**dicit militibus licēre castris  
exire.**

I ought to have done it.

He said that I ought to have done it.

oportuit me hoc facere.

dixit oportuisse me hoc facere.

3. He ordered the soldiers to fight bravely.

milites fortiter pugnare iussit.

I rejoice that you are well.

te valēre gaudeo.

(a) iubeo, vēto, prohibeo, cūpio.

} take Acc.

(b) Verbs expressing joy, sorrow, indignation, etc. } with Infin.

4. For fore ut, futurum esse ut, see 217, 218.

5. The introducing verb may itself be an infinitive.

He said that Caesar promised to lead the army.

dixit Caesarem promississe se exercitum ducturum esse.

### EXERCISE XXX.

A verb of saying or thinking is usually put at the beginning instead of at the end of a sentence. What a person says is of more importance than the fact that he said it. Compare 39.

1. He said he would return on the fifth day.
2. Solon pretended to be out of his mind.
3. They learned that the enemy would soon attack the legion.
4. After returning to the camp he undertook to lead the army through the defile.
5. We have heard that Rome was founded by Romulus.
6. They believed that the Romans would be defeated.
7. We all will think that he is telling the truth.
8. Word has been brought that the forces of the enemy have been routed.
9. The general hoped to take the town in a few days and ordered his men to assault it vigorously, but the enemy said they would neither send hostages nor accept any terms of peace nor deliver up their arms.

### EXERCISE XXXI.

1. He said he had twice forgiven me.
2. They said they would never forgive you.
3. They say they will pardon the guilty man.
4. Good citizens, he replied, will always obey the law.
5. He said he had not violated the laws.
6. He hoped to find both her and her husband at home.
7. He told me you were envied by all good citizens.
8. He said that he had been persuaded by the other chiefs.

9. He replied that the number of the soldiers was being increased and that he hoped soon to attack the town.
10. They threatened to assemble all the slaves.
11. Everybody knows that the poor are not envied.
12. They said it was often safer to run away than to fight.
13. He said we had not ordered the soldiers to obey the general.
14. He undertook to come to Rome in five days and promised to send a letter to his father.

### EXERCISE XXXII.

1. They thought that no harm could be done to their ships.
2. You all perceived that the enemy could no longer be resisted.
3. We knew the accused could not be pardoned.
4. They promised to surrender to Caesar and to give hostages.
5. He hoped to join his brother on the following day.
6. They will, it is plain, set out before daybreak.
7. All the cavalry, he thought, would follow him.
8. He says he repents of his folly.
9. They said they pitied their friends.
10. 'You might have abandoned the baggage,' he replied, 'and returned to the camp.'
11. He hoped to gain possession of the camp and baggage of the enemy.
12. He said that we ought to have used our time better.

### EXERCISE XXXIII.

1. On that very night the generals set out with two thousand horse, and after attempting in vain to gain possession of the enemies' camp and baggage, they promised to allow them to enter their fortified towns.
2. Within the last five days Caesar has learned that the Britons, after promising to come to him with fifty hostages, have attacked our armies, and have said that they will not employ the guides sent to them, but will themselves attempt to reach home.
3. The soldiers thought that they would easily take the town in a few days, but it was fortified with a wall and trench. The signal having been given, the soldiers, whom the general led against the town, made a fierce attack, but they were driven back by the enemy. It was clear that the enemy would attack the camp, and the generals, having promised to give hostages, left the camp, and set out for home by the same road by which they had come. The soldiers all said that their generals were not the same<sup>1</sup> as they had<sup>2</sup> formerly<sup>3</sup> been.

---

<sup>1</sup> Same as=*idem*, qui.    <sup>2</sup> Use the plupf. subjunctive, see 220.    <sup>3</sup> *quondam*.



## LESSON XVI.

63.

Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae, qui post proelium factum ad ea, quae iusserat Caesar, facienda convenerant, inter se colloquuti, cum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intellegerent et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, optimum factu esse duxerunt, rebellione factā, frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere et rem in hiemem producere, quod, iis superatis aut reditu interclusis, neminem postea belli inferendi causā in Britanniam transiturum confidebant.

On learning these facts, the chiefs of Britain who after (the fighting of) the battle had assembled to carry out Caesar's orders, held a conference. They perceived that the Romans lacked cavalry and ships and grain. They also ascertained the small number of our soldiers from the smallness of the camp. (Accordingly) they considered the best thing to do was to renew the war, keep our men from (procuring) grain and supplies and prolong the campaign into winter, because they were sure that, if these were overcome or cut off from return, no one would (ever) after cross over into Britain for the purpose of engaging in war.

Observe :—

- (a) The position of '**quibus rebus cognitis**' as the introducing words.
- (b) The position of '**principes Britanniae**' as the subject, followed by the '**qui**' clause connected with it, also '**colloquuti**' describing the mode of operation.
- (c) The '**cum**' clauses, giving the reasons for the action, placed before the principal verb.
- (d) '**duxerunt**' the sole principal verb.
- (e) The Abl. Absolutes followed by the infinitive on the principle of 39, I.
- (f) The Abl. Absolutes '**iis -superatis, -interclusis,**' denoting condition, and placed at the beginning of their clause.

## EXERCISE XXXIV.

- 1. After several days had passed by and he had ordered grain to be conveyed thither, he was suddenly informed by the scouts that all had left that part of the canton, and that the mountains were held by a very large number of the Seduni.
- 2. After landing the soldiers there, Scipio sets out and joins his brother. After they had taken the city by force and had plundered it when taken, they then made for Carthage.

3. When he had looked round upon (*circumspicio*) the district closed in by the mountains and rivers, he summons the chief and asks him where on earth (*ubi terrarum*) he is (*sit*).
4. After Mancinus saw that the enemy did not cease to pursue and that there was no hope of escape, he cheered his men and returned to battle.
5. Accordingly, when he was not able to escape through the defile and the army could not be led across the mountains, he left Crassus with five hundred infantry in the camp while (= and) he himself retreated as quickly as possible to the nearest town.
6. When the enemy came to the camp, our men made a sally, slew quite a number of them, took even their leader Lugotorix captive, and brought back their own men in safety. On perceiving this, Crassus encouraged his men, and in accordance with the general desire, proceeded to the camp of the enemy.
7. When, however, they saw the tower was on the move and approaching the walls, alarmed by the strange and unusual sight, they sent ambassadors to Caesar to treat for peace.
8. Caesar sent forward the cavalry, left six cohorts at the camp and followed closely with the rest of the forces.
9. But after some chiefs of that state, influenced by their friendship for Cingetorix and alarmed by the arrival of our army, sought pardon from Caesar, Indutiomarus, thinking that Caesar would put him to death, fled from his country.
10. After taking several towns, Caesar perceived that all his labor was<sup>1</sup> in vain, that the flight of the enemy was not checked when their towns were taken, and that no harm could be done to them.
11. Alarmed by his sudden arrival, and perceiving that he had performed in one day a work which they had with great difficulty accomplished within twenty days, the Helvetii immediately promise to send hostages to him and provide his army with grain.

---

<sup>1</sup>So much labor was being spent, *sumo*.

### EXERCISE XXXV.

They considered it was safer to block up the roads, cut off supplies and win the victory without any loss.

**tutius esse arbitrabantur, obsessis viis, commeatu intercluso, sine ullo vulnere victoriā potiri.** Compare 63 (e).

1. The scouts reported that the enemy, after fortifying their camp and placing guards at the gates, had sent ambassadors to their neighbors.
2. Caesar thought that the enemy, after promising to give hostages, would set out for home and not attack our army, but they attempted to gain possession of our baggage, and after the seventh legion, which was sent against them, had defeated them,

they hurried off (*contendo*) home by the same road by which they had come.

3. Work into a period.

On learning of the massacre of the two cohorts, Labienus feared a general<sup>1</sup> rising of the Gauls. He had not a sufficient supply of provisions. Accordingly he at once wrote to Caesar that he would leave his camp and reach him on the third day.

---

<sup>1</sup> A rising (*tumultus, us*) of all the Gauls.

### EXERCISE XXXVI.

In writing this extract, put the subordinate verbs in the subjunctive.

An audience before the senate<sup>1</sup> having been granted to him, he unfolds<sup>2</sup> the achievements<sup>3</sup> of his brother in Italy. 'He had engaged in battle with six generals, of whom four were consuls; two, the dictator and master of the horse; he had slain upwards of two hundred thousand of the enemy, had taken prisoner<sup>4</sup> more than fifty thousand. Of four consuls, two had fallen; of the (other) two, the one had escaped wounded, the other, after the loss of his whole army, with scarcely fifty men. The master of the horse had been routed and put to flight; the dictator was considered a wonderful<sup>5</sup> general because he had never risked a general engagement.<sup>6</sup> The Brutii and Apuli had revolted to the Carthaginians. Capua, which was the capital of Campania, but after the ruin<sup>7</sup> of the cause of Rome<sup>8</sup> in the battle of Cannae, of Italy, had surrendered to Hannibal. For these great and numerous victories it was right that thanks should be tendered to and gratitude felt<sup>9</sup> towards the immortal gods.'

---

<sup>1</sup> Audience before the senate=*senatus*. <sup>2</sup>*expono*. <sup>3</sup>=the things carried on by.  
<sup>4</sup>Take prisoner=*capio*. <sup>5</sup>*unicus*. <sup>6</sup>*se in aciem committere*. <sup>7</sup>*confligo*. See 48 (b). <sup>8</sup>*res Romana*. <sup>9</sup>To tender thanks=*gratias agere*; to feel grateful to=*gratiam habere*.

### LESSON XVII.

#### 64.

#### THE SUPINES.

<i>lēgāti ad Caesarem grātulātum</i>	Envoys came to Caesar to con-
<i>convenerunt.</i>	gratulate him.
<i>pacem petītum legatos miserunt.</i>	They sent ambassadors to sue
	for peace.

The **Supine** in 'um' is used with **Verbs of Motion** to denote **Purpose**.

The so-called *Fut. Infin. Pass.* is a combination of the *Supine* + *iri*, the pres. infin. pass. of *eo*.

**dicit urbem captum iri** is literally, he says there is a going to take the city.

'iri' is used impersonally ; 'captum' is acc. of 'motion to' ; 'urbem' is object of **captum**.

## 65.

**mirābile dictū.**

Wonderful to relate.

**hoc est optimum factū.**

This is the best thing to do.

**nefas est dictū**

It is a sacrilege to say.

The **Supine in 'u'** is used as an **Abl. of Specification** with a few adjectives.

**facilis, difficilis, incredibilis, etc. ; and with  
fas est, nefas est, opus est.**

There are only a few in common use.

**audītū, cognitū, dictū, factū, vīsū.**

It never takes an object.

The supines are really the **Acc. and Abl. of a Verbal Noun** of the fourth declension.

## 66.

## THE GERUND.

(a) **ius vocandi senatum.**

The right of summoning the senate.

**cupidus pugnandi.**

Desirous of fighting.

**pabulandi causā.**

For the sake of foraging.

(b) **aqua utilis est bibendo.**

Water is useful for drinking.

(c) **natus ad regendum.**

Born for ruling.

(d) **large copiam partiendo.**

By a generous distribution of booty.

**summa voluptas ex discen-  
do capitur.**

The greatest pleasure is derived  
from learning.

The **Gerund** is a **Verbal Noun**, corresponding to the English Verbal Noun in 'ing.'

As a noun—It has declension, four cases ;  
it may itself be governed.

As a verb—It may govern an object ;  
it takes adverbial modifiers.

In the case of transitive verbs it is *only the Gen. and the Abl.* (without a preposition) that as a rule *admit a direct object.* (See 69.)

67.

Walking is delightful.  
He hates being a slave.

**ambulare iucundum est.**  
**odit servire.** (Compare 27.)

The *Nom.*, and except after a preposition, the *Acc.* of the Gerund, are supplied by the Infinitive.

68.

## THE GERUNDIVE.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) <b>consilium urbis capiendae.</b>                   | The plan (of the city to be taken) of taking the city. |
| <b>cupidus urbis videndae.</b>                          | Desirous (of the city to be seen) of seeing the city.  |
| <b>pācis petendae causā.</b>                            | For the sake (of peace to be sought) of seeking peace. |
| (b) <b>locus castris muniendis aptus.</b>               | Ground suited for fortifying a camp.                   |
| (c) <b>natus ad viros regendos.</b>                     | Born for ruling men.                                   |
| <b>ad pacem petendam venerunt.</b>                      | They came for the purpose of seeking peace.            |
| (d) <b>poetis legendis mens alitur.</b>                 | The mind is nourished by reading the poets.            |
| <b>multum temporis in epistolis scribendis consumo.</b> | I spend much time in writing letters.                  |

The **Gerundive** is a **Verbal-Adjective**, *i.e.*, a participle. There is no form in English corresponding to it.

69.

The Gerundive construction and not the Gerund with a Direct Object

- (a) Is more commonly used in the case of the Genitive and Ablative ;
- (b) Is almost always used in the case of the Dative ;
- (c) Is almost always used after prepositions.

A safe rule for beginners is '**always use the Gerundive when you can.**'

But the *Gerund* and not the Gerundive is used

- (a) With all really Intransitive Verbs.

'By sparing the enemy' is only '**parcendo hostibus.**'



- (b) To avoid ambiguity.

**aliquid docendi causā.**

For the sake of teaching something.

(alicuius could be either masculine or neuter.)

**Gerund vs. Gerundive.**

- (a) The Gerund is active ; the Gerundive is passive.  
 (b) The Gerund is a verbal noun ; the Gerundive is a verbal adjective.  
 (c) The Gerund governs its object ; the Gerundive agrees with the substantive.  
 (d) The Gerund may be used alone ; the Gerundive cannot be used alone.

**70. The Gerundive, denoting Duty, Obligation, Necessity.**

The Gerundive has another use quite distinct from the preceding.

- (a) **liber lēgendus**—A book to be read—A book worth reading.  
 (b) **pārentes nobis amandi sunt**—Parents are to be loved by us—We should love our parents.

The Gerundive denoting duty, obligation, necessity, is used either as Attributive or Predicate.

In conjunction with '*sum*' a whole conjugation may be formed.

**parentes nobis amandi sunt.**

**nobis fortiter pugnandum\* est.**

We must fight bravely.

**legibus ab omnibus parendum est.**

All must obey the laws.

**iniuriarum nostrarum nobis obliviscendum est.**

We must forget our wrongs.

**suo cuique utendum est iudicio.**

Every man must use his own judgment.

- (a) The Active form in English must be turned into the Passive.  
 (b) The Agent is expressed by the Dative.  
 (c) Intransitive verbs must be used impersonally, but admit their own case-construction.

---

\*Some grammarians hold that this impersonal form in Nom. (and Acc. in **Oratio Obliqua**) is the Gerund, the meaning being literally, there is (a) fighting for us, etc.

- (d) To avoid ambiguity in the case of verbs that govern the Dative, the Agent is expressed by 'a' or 'ab' with the Abl.

## 71.

We must do this.	<b>hoc nobis faciendum est ;</b>
We should have done this.	<b>hoc nobis faciendum erat ;</b>
We shall have to do this.	<b>hoc nobis faciendum erit ;</b>

become respectively in *Oratio Obliqua* :

**dixit hoc nobis faciendum esse, fuisse, fore.**

## 72.

## SPECIAL POINTS.

**utor, fruor, fungor, potior** (originally transitive) regularly admit the Gerundive.

<b>hostes in spem potiundorum castrorum venerant.</b>	The enemy had entertained the hope of gaining possession of the camp.
---	---

## 73.

<b>suū purgandi causā venerunt.</b>	They came for the purpose of clearing themselves.
-------------------------------------	---

With the Genitives **mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri**, the Gerund or Gerundive form in **di** is used regardless of the gender or number of the pronoun.

Three explanations of this form are suggested.

(a) The pronouns are the gen. sing. neut. of the possessives used substantively.

(b) The form in '**di**' is the Gerund,

(1) with the possessive pronoun in the neuter singular agreeing with it (=of their clearing).

(2) with the reflexive pronoun in the genitive as an Objective Genitive (=of the clearing of themselves).

## 74.

<b>obsides Aeduis custodiendos tradit.</b>	He hands the hostages over to the Aedui to guard.
<b>Caesar pontem faciendum curavit.</b>	Caesar had a bridge built. provided for the construction of a bridge.

**pontem faciendum conduxit.**

He took a contract to build a bridge.

With **do, trado, curo, loco** (let a contract), **conduco, suscipio**,  
The *Gerundive* *acquires a final sense*; it denotes the end or purpose.

## 75.

Caution :—Your son was not to be persuaded =

Your son could not be persuaded = **filio tuo persuaderi non potuit.**

Obs.—He sent the cavalry to forage. equites.  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{pabulātum} \\ \text{ad pabulandum} \\ \text{pabulandi causā} \end{array} \right\} \text{mīsīt.}$

You already have three methods of expressing Purpose in short phrases.

## EXERCISE XXXVII.

1. They came to ask peace. He came to persuade you. He sent soldiers to lay waste the fields.
2. This is easy to do. The citizens assembled in crowds to congratulate Caesar.
3. They sent ambassadors to Caesar in Gaul to ask aid.
4. These things are not only shameful to do, but even hard to tell of.
5. They said they were ready for departure.
6. He found the rest of the ships ready for sailing.
7. He won popularity by sparing the enemy.
8. The mind is nourished by learning and reflection.
9. By living well we are able to die well.

In crowds, use adj.

**frequens.**

Congratulate.

**gratulor**, 1, with Dat. of person.

To win popularity.

**famam parare.**

Reflect.

**cogito**, 1.

## EXERCISE XXXVIII.

1. The Romans were skilled in waging war.
2. We are all desirous of seeing and hearing many things.
3. The enemy formed the plan of burning the towns.
4. No opportunity was given the enemy for forming a plan.
5. They spent three days in fortifying the camp.
6. They will not let slip the opportunity of freeing themselves forever and of avenging themselves upon (**ulciscor**) the Romans.

7. These men came to our camp for the purpose of praising themselves and accusing you.
8. It was by daring and doing, not by hesitation (**cunctor**) and inaction (**cesso**, I.), that Hannibal was driven out of Italy.

## EXERCISE XXXIX.

Before doing this exercise, do exercise 96, page 193.

Write both exercises: (1) In **Oratio Recta**; (2) In **Oratio Obliqua** after **dixit**.

1. The enemy had no hope of gaining possession of the town.
2. We must all die. We must therefore live well.
3. Caesar should have attacked the enemy before daybreak.
4. Cicero should have consulted the senate.
5. Cicero should have consulted the interests of the state.
6. These men must be believed. We must never believe liars.
7. We must believe these statements (**haec**, N. Pl. See 24, b).
8. The work will have to be done. We shall have to spare him.
9. The people must be persuaded. The soldiers must be encouraged.
10. We must gain possession of the town.
11. He should not have forgotten his friends.
12. The innocent must be spared, and the guilty condemned.
13. The soldiers should have fought more bravely.
14. No opportunity of retreating must be given the enemy.

## EXERCISE XL.

1. He ordered his lieutenants to see (**curo**, see 74) that as many ships as possible were built during the winter.
2. Seeing that he must either retreat or engage the enemy on unfavorable ground, he at once sent forward the cavalry to break down the bridge.
3. After receiving hostages he thought he ought to spare the women and children.
4. Messengers reported that a storm had shattered the war ships, in which he had had the army transported.
5. The soldiers had at one and the same time to leap down from the ships, come to a stand amid the waves, and fight the foe.
6. They should have formed a plan for taking the towns.
7. The guards must spare the women and children.
8. We must set out as soon as possible and collect as many men as possible.
9. Hannibal thought he ought neither to believe them rashly nor yet treat them with scorn.
10. He sent his brother with the largest part of the forces against Hasdrubal, not only for the purpose of protecting the old allies and winning over new ones, but also for the purpose of driving Hasdrubal from Spain.

## LESSON XVIII.

Can, Could ; May, Might ; Ought, Should, Must.

76. Possibility is expressed by *possum, posse, potui* = I am able.

I can do this.	<i>hoc facere possum.</i>
I could (might) have done this.	<i>hoc facere poteram, potui.</i>
I can, shall be able to, do this.	<i>hoc facere potero.</i>

77. Permission is expressed by *licet, licere, licuit* = It is permitted.

I may do this.	<i>hoc mihi facere licet.</i>
I might have done this.	<i>hoc mihi facere licuit, licebat.</i>
I may, shall be allowed to, do this.	<i>hoc mihi facere licebit.</i>

*licet* is occasionally used with the Subjunctive.

<i>hoc facias licet.</i>	You may do this. (See 163, note.)
<i>hoc tibi per me facere licuit.</i>	You might have done this so far as I was concerned.

78. Duty, obligation ; *ought, should*, may be expressed in three ways.

- (a) *debeo, ere, ui*, used personally, with *Infin.*
- (b) *oportet, ere, uit*, used impersonally, with *Acc.* and *Infin.*
- (c) Most commonly by the **Gerundive**.

I ought to, should, do this.	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>hoc facere debeo.</i>  <i>hoc me facere oportet.</i>  <i>hoc mihi faciendum est.</i> </div>
I ought to, should, have done this. It was my duty to do this.	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>hoc facere debui, debebam.</i>  <i>hoc me facere oportuit,</i>  <i>oportebat.</i>  <i>hoc mihi faciendum fuit, erat.</i> </div>
I ought to, should, do this (future). It shall be my duty to do this.	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>hoc facere debebo.</i>  <i>hoc me facere oportebit.</i>  <i>hoc mihi faciendum erit.</i> </div>

79. Necessity—*must*, may be expressed in two ways.

- (a) By the **Gerundive**, which expresses necessity as well as duty.
- (b) *necesse est* to imply **absolute** (logical) **necessity**, with the



Dative and **infinitive**, or, in the case of persons, the **subjunctive** with or without *ut*.

I must do this.	{ hoc mihi faciendum est. mihi facere (faciam) necesse est.
I had to do this.	{ hoc mihi faciendum erat, fuit. mihi facere (facerem) necesse erat, fuit.
I shall have to do this.	{ hoc mihi faciendum erit. mihi facere (faciam) necesse erit.

Observe the agreement of the predicate after **licet** and **necesse est**.

Others may be cowards, you must needs be brave men.

*aliis licet ignavis esse, vobis necesse est viris fortibus esse.*

### EXERCISE XLI.

- Translate in three ways, if possible :
  - The soldiers ought to have obeyed their general.
  - The boy ought to have used his time better.
  - He thought that the enemy ought not to be spared.
- He told the soldiers that the work should have been finished before sunset.
- Others may be slaves, the Anglo-Saxon must needs be free.
- They could have done this if they had tried (plupf. subjunctive).
- The cavalry should have arrived sooner.
- You may not leave the camp.
- Dumnorix said that as far as he was concerned they might leave the camp in safety.
- I shall leave you to return to your father at Rome as soon as you wish.
- We must not always consult our own interest.
- They thought that they should not always consult their own interest.

### LESSON XIX.

#### TIME.

80. Time 'at which' is expressed by the **Ablative**.  
vere, aestate, auctumno, hieme, quinto die, tertio anno.

81. 'Duration of time' is expressed by the **Accusative**.  
omnem hiemem. All winter.  
tres annos. For three years.

*per omnem hiemem*—throughout the whole winter, is a more emphatic form.

82.

‘Many years after’ = (a) **multis annis post.****post** is an adverb.**annis** is Abl. of Measure of Difference.= (b) **post multos annos.****post** is a preposition, governing **annos.**Many years after his death — **multis annis post eius mortem.****post** is a preposition.(b) Three days after, }  
After three days } he left the city.

tribus post diebus	} urbe excessit.
tertio post die	
post tres dies	

(c) Three days after he left the city (he died).

post tres dies	} quam urbe excessit.
post tertium diem	
tribus post diebus	
tertio post die	
tertio die	

Similarly with **ante** = before.83. Time ‘**within which**’ is expressed by(a) the **Ablative**, or,(b) **intra** or **inter**, with **Acc.**Within three days — (a) **tribus diebus** — **tertio die.**(b) **intra tres dies** — **intra tertium diem.**84. Time ‘**ago**’ is expressed by **abhinc**, with **Acc.** or **Abl.**Three days ago — **abhinc tres dies**, or **tribus diebus.****abhinc** is placed first.85. Time ‘**prospective**’ is expressed by ‘**ad**’ or ‘**in**,’ with **Acc.**

He invited me to dinner for the following day.

**ad caenam me in posterum diem invitavit.**To pay by the first = **ad Kalendas solvere.**

86. PHRASES AND IDIOMS.

(a) **bello Punico secundo** = in the second Punic war.

(Time ‘at which.’)

**in bello** = in times of war ;

referring to the circumstances or conditions of war.



8. From that day up to the very last day of his life, he was dear to his fellow-citizens.
9. Mithridates, who in a single day had butchered<sup>3</sup> so many citizens of Rome, had now been on<sup>4</sup> the throne two and twenty years from that date.
10. On his departure he assures<sup>5</sup> (them) he will return by the seventh day.
11. The kings were expelled<sup>6</sup> in the year of the City 244. He came to the throne A.D. 1418. The Romans were defeated by the Carthaginians under the leadership of Hannibal, B.C. 216.
12. Six legions were enrolled for that year.

---

<sup>1</sup>Abdicate—**se abdicare** (with abl.), or **magistratum abdicare**. <sup>2</sup>Arrange—**constituo**. <sup>3</sup>Butcher—**trucidare**. <sup>4</sup>Had now been on the throne=was already (iam) reigning. <sup>5</sup>Assure—**confirmare**. <sup>6</sup>Expel—**exigo**, 3, **egi, actus**.

## 87. THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

The Roman months contained (after the reform of the Calendar by Julius Caesar) the same number of days as at present.

Their names were: **Januarius, Februarius, Martius, Aprilis, Maius, Junius, Quintilis, Sextilis, September, October, November, December.**

These words are properly Adjectives, agreeing with '*mensis*' understood.

The Roman year originally began with March.

Hence by inclusive counting you obtain the names of the months indicated by numerals.

'**Quintilis**,' after 46 B.C., was changed to '**Julius**,' and '**Sextilis**,' after the Empire, to '**Augustus**,' in honor of the two first Caesars.

## 88.

There were *three fixed points* in the month from which the other dates were reckoned.

These were: **Kalendae** (the Kalends), the first day of the month; **Nōnae** (the Nones), the fifth or seventh; **Idūs, uum, f.** (the Ides), the thirteenth or fifteenth.

'In March, July, October, May,  
The Nones were on the seventh day'  
And the Ides on the fifteenth.

The forms used were subject to contraction.

Kal. Jan.—Kalendae Januariae.	Jan. 1st.
Id. Mart.—Idibus Martiis.	On March 15th.
in Non. Jun.—in Nonas Junias.	For the fifth of June.

### 89.

The day before any fixed point was expressed by *prīdiē*, with *Acc.*

pridie Kal. Jan.	Dec. 31st.	pridie Id. Mart.	March 14th.
pridie Non. Jun.	June 4th.		

### 90.

All other days were reckoned *backwards* and by *inclusive counting* from one of the fixed points.

Dec. 30th.	die tertio ante Kalendas Januarias.
March 10th.	die sexto ante Idus Martias.
June 2nd.	die quarto ante Nonas Junias.

These forms might be shortened by omitting *diē* or *ante*, or both, and by using the Roman numeral to indicate the day.

Thus,

die tertio ante Kal. Jan.
tertio ante Kal. Jan.
tertio Kal. Jan.
III. Kal. Jan.

### 91.

But there is another form more common\* than any of these, and used almost exclusively by Cicero and Livy.

ante diem tertium Kalendas Januarias,
shortened into
a. d. iii. Kal. Jan.
a. d. vi. Id. Mart.

### 92.

These forms were regarded as combined expressions, and treated as nouns capable of being prefixed by *ad*, *in* or *ex*.

ad ante diem tertium Kalendas Januarias.
Up to the 30th of Dec.
ex a. d. VI. Id. Mart.
From the 10th of March.



## LESSON XX.

## PLACE.

Know the following names of places.

Rōma, ae ; Corinthus, i ; Athēnae, arum ; Delphi, orum ; Carthāgo, inis ; Curēs, ium ; Aegīna, ae.

93. Place 'to which' (a) is regularly expressed by the  
**Acc. with a preposition.**

ad Italiam ; in urbem.

(b) Names of towns and small islands omit the preposition.

Romam ; Aeginam.

(c) So also domum, home ; domos ; rus, into the country.

To the city of Rome.

To his father at Rome.

To his father in Italy.

To Athens in Greece.

To the illustrious city of Athens.

ad urbem Romam.

Romam ad patrem suum. To

Rome to his father.

in Italiam ad patrem suum.

Athenas in Graeciam.

Athenas in urbem praeclarissimam.

ad Genevam exercitus contendit

The army hurried towards or to the vicinity of Geneva.

ad Cannas, or apud Cannas pugnatum est.

The battle took place at (near) Cannae, in the vicinity of Cannae.

ad veterem domum.

To an old house or to his old home.

The preposition is used when an adjective is attached.

94. Place 'from which' (a) is regularly expressed by the  
**Abl. with a preposition.**

ex Italiā, ab urbe.

(b) Names of towns and small islands omit the preposition.

Romā, Aeginā.

(c) So also dōmō, from home ; rūre, from the country.

From the city of Rome.

From his father at Rome.

From his father in Italy.

ab urbe Romā.

Romā a patre suo.

ex Italiā a patre suo.

From Athens in Greece.  
 From the illustrious city of  
 Athens.  
**a Genevā.**

**Athēnīs a Graeciā.**  
**Athēnīs ex urbe praeclarissimā.**

From the vicinity of Geneva.

**95. Place 'in which' (a) is regularly expressed by the Abl. with a preposition.**  
**in Italiā, in urbe.**

(b) Names of towns and small islands omit the preposition.

**Carthagine, Athenis, Delphis, Curi-  
 bus (Local Ablative).**

(c) And in the 1st and 2nd declension and singular number use the **Locative**, which in form is like the Genitive. **Romae**—at Rome; **Corinthi**—at Corinth.

**Other Locatives are—**

**domi**, at home. **humi**, on the ground.  
**belli**, in war. **militiae**, in war, on service.  
**ruri**, in the country (probably an old Ablative).

also **vesperi**, at evening. **heri**, yesterday.  
**animi**, in the phrase '**pendēre animi**,' to be in suspense in one's mind.

**96.**

Some names have besides the Local Abl. also a Locative.

**Carthagine** or **Carthagini**; **Tibure** or **Tiburi**; **Lacedaemone** or **Lacedaemoni**.

**Other Local Ablatives are—**

(a) **fōrīs**, out of doors; **terrā marīque**, on land and sea.

(b) Names of towns or other words when joined with **totus**, or even other adjectives.

**totā Corintho**, in the whole of Corinth.  
**totā urbe, totis castris.**

(c) Often with the general words **lōcō, locis, parte.**  
**hōc loco**, or **in hoc loco**, in this place.

(d) And in poetry with any word.

At my house, *domi meae* (or, *apud me*).

The Locative of *domus* is allowable with possessive pronouns in *veteri domo*, in an old house or in his old home.

The preposition is used when an adjective is attached.

In the city of Rome, in *urbe Romā*.

At Athens in Greece, *Athenis in Graeciā*.

In the once famous city of Antioch, *Antiochiaē, celebri quondam urbe*. (Local Abl.)

### EXERCISE XLIII.

1. To, from, at or in Rome, Athens, Corinth, Carthage, home, country, Gaul.
2. To, from, at his home in the illustrious city of Thebes (*Thebae, arum*).
3. They say that he lived many years at Veii and died at Carthage.
4. After living several years in his boyhood at Corinth, he moved late in life to Athens.
5. Gracchus sent his legions under the command of his lieutenants from Cumae to Luceria, in Apulia, and ordered Valerius the praetor to go to Brundisium with all the forces which he had had in the camp at Luceria.
6. Hannibal sent Hanno back from Nola into (the country of) the Brutii, while he himself set out to Arpi in Apulia.
7. Leaving the praetor at Lilybaeum, the consul crossed over to the Island of Malta.
8. Setting out from the city with his army, he joins his colleague at the river Trebia.
9. He was sent from Athens to the oracle at Delphi.
10. On the next day Caesar moved his camp forward ten miles, and remained there for five days; on the sixth he destroyed all the houses in the town of Brundisium, and a few days afterwards at daybreak, set sail for Greece.

### EXERCISE XLIV.

Coriolanus having left Rome, retired to the country of the Volsci. Here Attius Tullius, a distinguished man and bitter enemy to the Romans, received him kindly into his house and formed a strong friendship with him. The Volsci hoped that he would aid them in their wars. Not long afterwards war was declared between them and the Romans, and having divided their army into two parts, they gave one to Coriolanus, and the other to Attius. The plebeians were unwilling to take up arms, and the senate sent ambassadors to the camp to sue for peace.

## EXERCISE XLV.

Ten years ago, on a very fine day in spring, two boys whose (**quorum**) fathers were very distinguished men, walked from home very many miles into the country. They did not take (**porto**) with them (**secum**) very heavy loads. For three days they walked through the fields, and on the fourth day came to a very deep river. Across the river was a very high mountain, and on the top of the mountain many trees. They remained two years in the country, and wrote letters home to their friends. In autumn they returned home with a farmer who was bringing a large quantity of corn to the city. They were wiser and better boys, and often told long stories about (their) journey to the other boys and girls.

## LESSON XXI.

## ACCUSATIVE CASE.

## 97. Summary of Rules.

(1) **Acc. of the Direct Object.**

(2) **Two Accusatives**, one of the **Person**, another of the **Thing**.

With verbs of asking, demanding, teaching, and concealing.  
**te sententiam rogo. te hoc rogo. te linguam Latinam doceo.**

(a) **hoc cēlor.** I am kept in the dark about this.

**sententiam rogāris.** You are asked your opinion.

In the Passive the Acc. of the Thing remains, the Acc. of the Person becomes the Nominative.

**doceo**—I inform, takes 'de' with Abl.

**peto**, always, **precor** and **postulo** usually, take Abl. of Person with 'ab.' **pacem a Caesare petit.**

**quaero** takes 'ab' or 'ex.'

(3) **Two Accusatives with Compound Verbs.**

**trādūco, transporto, trāicio.**

**equites montem traduxit.**

(a) **equites montem traducti sunt.**

In the Passive the object of the verb becomes the subject; the object after the preposition remains.

#### (4) Two Accusatives—Direct Object and Predicate Accusative.

With verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing.

Ancum regem creaverunt.

#### (5) Cognate Accusative—an acc. related (**cognatus**) to the verb in meaning.

vitam vivere. somnium somniare. proelium pugnare.

#### (6) Acc. of 'Motion towards.' (93 *b* and *c*.)

#### (7) Acc. of Respect.

caput doleo.	I am pained as to the head—I have a headache.
niger oculos.	Black as to the eyes—with black eyes.
fractus membra.	With limbs shattered.

#### (8) Acc. with verbs, passive in form, but **Middle** in meaning.

galeam induitur.	He puts on his helmet.
cinctus temporā hederā.	Having bound his temples with ivy.

#### (9) Adverbial Acc.

multum valent.	They are very strong.
quicquid possunt.	Whatever power they possess.
nihil movēmur.	We are not at all moved.
illud gloriōr.	That is my boast.
eadem peccat.	He makes the same mistakes.
maximam partem lacte vivunt.	They live for the most part on milk.

In this are included such *Adverbial Expressions* as—

id temporis, id ætatis, id genus (for eius generis), etc.

cum id ætatis puero. With a boy of that age.

tuam vicem doleo. I grieve for your sake;

and also Adjectives in the Neuter, used as Adverbs in poetry.

dulce loquentem. Sweetly prattling.

#### (10) Acc. of Duration of Time and Extent of Space.

#### \* (11) Acc. with Prepositions.



ad	citrā	iuxtā	prope
adversus	contra	ob	propter
ante	ergā	penes	secundum
apud	extrā	per	suprā
circā	infrā	pōne	trans
circum	inter	post	ultrā
cis	intrā	praeter	versus

in, sub, subter, super,

take the *Acc.* when they denote *Motion*,

take the *Abl.* when they denote *Rest*.

in Italiā. in Italiā.

sub mensā canis iacet. sub mensam canis venit.

sub montem—Toward the mountain; sub monte—At the foot of the mountain.

## (12) Acc. in Exclamations.

heu mē miserum—Ah! me unhappy.

## (13) Acc. with Infinitive.

### EXERCISE XLVI.

1. Why was Cato asked his opinion first?
2. The army was transported to Carthage in Africa.
3. He led his troops across the bridge and at once drew up the line.
4. Cicero was called the Father of his Country.
5. The guides pointed out the way to the lieutenant.
6. The soldier withdrew from the field with a severe wound on the head.
7. I make this request of you. I hope I shall obtain it.
8. Caesar kept demanding corn from the Aedui.
9. He learned that the river was not more than three miles distant.
10. Having assembled in the forum, they saluted Marius consul.
11. The general was carried back within the entrenchments, badly wounded in the thigh and right shoulder.
12. He makes many promises, many threats, but I do not believe he will accomplish these objects. (See 36.)

### EXERCISE XLVII.

Hurrying to Rome, Brutus called an assembly of the people, who, upon hearing the story, agreed to banish the wicked Tarquins. Old Tarquin, when the tidings reached him, rode to Rome, but found the gates closed against<sup>1</sup> him. Meanwhile Brutus had reached the camp at Ardea and had won over<sup>2</sup> the army there. The deposed king took refuge<sup>3</sup> at Caere in Etruria, while his son Sextus sought safety<sup>3</sup> at Gabii.

<sup>1</sup> Use Dative. <sup>2</sup>concilio, 1. <sup>3</sup>Took refuge—sought safety. One verb will represent both.

## LESSON XXII.

## THE DATIVE.

98.

The Dative is in general represented by 'to' and 'for.' The chief exceptions to this are 'to,' denoting 'motion to,' as *ad urbem venire*, and 'for,' denoting 'in behalf of,' as *pro patriā pugnare*.

The Dative in general expresses the person or thing 'affected by' an action, state or quality.

The Acc. expresses the person or thing directly or primarily acted upon. (See 18.)

Many verbs that govern the objective in English are represented by verbs that govern the Dative in Latin. Such verbs in Latin are Intransitive. Every really transitive verb in Latin governs the Acc.

99.

## Summary of Rules.

## (1) Dative of Indirect Object.

To denote the person to whom something is given, said, or done.

## (a) With transitive verbs in connection with Acc.

<i>librum puero dēdi.</i>	I gave the boy a book.
<i>fabulam puero narravi.</i>	I told the boy a story.
<i>nihil mihi respondit.</i>	He made me no reply.

## (b) With intransitive verbs. (See 19.)

## (2) Dative with Compounds.

Many verbs compounded with the following prepositions govern the Dative.

*ad, ante, com, dē, in inter.*

*ob, post, prae, prō sub, super, and sometimes circum.*

Also the Adverbs *bene, male, satis.*

Intransitive verbs compounded with the above prepositions govern the Dative.

Transitive verbs so compounded govern the Acc. and Dat.

*Labienus exercitui praefuit.*

*Caesar Labienum exercitui praefecit.*

**(3) Dative of Reference.**

To denote the person to whom a statement refers or is of interest. It is not used in close connection with the verb alone, but is connected rather with the whole sentence.

**Caesari ad pēdēs se proiēce-** They threw themselves at Caesar's  
**runt.** feet.

**hoc mihi spem minuit.** This lessened my hope.

(The Dative in these cases is far more expressive than a possessive pronoun would be.)

**est urbe egressīs tumulus.** As (you) go out of the city there  
is a mound.

Under Dative of reference are embraced—

**(4) (a) Ethical Dative.**

**quid mihi Celsus agit ?** What is my Celsus doing ?

**at tibi vēnit ad me Caninius.** But, mark you, Caninius comes  
to me.

**(5) (b) Dative of Separation.**

Compounds of *ab*, *dē*, *ex* and *ad*, meaning in general 'taking away,' take a Dative.

**silici scintillam excūdit.** He struck a spark from the flint.  
**gladium tibi abstūli.** I took away your sword from you.  
**omnia nobis adēmit.** He robbed us of everything.

**(6) Dative of Possessor.**

Is used with '*sum.*'

**mihi est liber.** I have a book.

**puero nōmen est Caio**  
**puero nōmen est Caius** } The boy's name is Caius.

With '*nōmen est*' the name is usually in the dative by apposition.

**(7) Dative of the Agent (instead of *a* or *ab* with Abl.).**

Is used with the Gerundive.

**virtus omnibus cōlenda est.** All must cultivate virtue.

**nobis pugnandum est.** We must fight.

To avoid ambiguity the Abl. with *a* or *ab* is used.

**tibi a me parendum est.** I must obey you.

Dative of Agent occurs also with

(a) Adjectives in 'bilis.'

**nulli flebilior quam tibi,** By none more bewept than by  
Vergili. thee, O, Virgil.

(b) Perfect participles passive.

**mihi consilium captum est.** I have a plan (already) formed.  
**hoc mihi probatum ac laudatum est.** This was approved of and commended by me.

In this case the Dat. is largely a Dat. of Interest.

## (8) Dative of Purpose.

**duas legiones praesidio reliquit.** He left two legions as a guard.

**duas legiones praesidio castris reliquit.** As a guard for the camp.

**est mihi curae.** It is a care to me.

**nobis sunt odio.** They are hateful to us,—hated by us.

**decemviri legibus scribendis.** Ten commissioners for drawing up laws.

**dictator creandis consulibus comitia habuit.** The dictator held the elections for the election of consuls.

**receptui (signum) canere.** To sound the signal for retreat.

**non solvendo esse.** To be not (fit) for paying—to be bankrupt.

The following are useful illustrations of this very common idiom :

**venire, or mittere, auxilio, subsidio, praesidio.** To the assistance, support, defence of.

**culpaē dare, or vitio vertere.** To impute as a fault.

**dono, muneri dare.** To give as a gift, reward.

**quaestui habere.** To consider a source of gain.

**esse laudi**—to be praiseworthy ; **honori**—creditable, honorable ;

**dēdēcōri**—dishonorable, discreditable ; **odio**—hateful ;

**impedimento**—a hindrance ; **dētrimento**—detrimental ;

**damno**—a loss, hurtful ; **ēmolumento**—a gain, useful ;

**crimini**—a charge ; **opprobrio**—a reproach, disgraceful ;

**argumento, documento**—a proof ; **dōlōri**—painful.

**magno** or **summo** added to the noun will represent 'great,' 'very great,' or 'very.'

**quanto**—'how great,' or 'how.'

**tanto**—quanto—'as great'—'as' or 'as'—'as.'

**(9) Dative with Impersonal Verbs.**

**accidit**—it happens ; **contingit**—it is one's good fortune ;  
**expedit**—it is expedient ; **libet**—it pleases ;  
**licet**—it is allowable ; **placet**—it pleases.

**100.****(10) Dative with Adjectives**

Is closely related to its use with verbs.

The most common adjectives are denoted by

agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable,  
 subject, useful.

**prōpior, proximus**, sometimes take the Acc.

**prōpe, prōpius, proxime**, adverbs, regularly take the Acc.

*Other constructions occur.*

(a) The Genitive, with **similis, dissimilis, par, dispar**,  
 especially to express likeness in character.

**Pompeii similis ; veri simile**—probable.

(b) The Abl. with **ab** with **dispar** and **contrarius**.

(c) **ūtilis, idōneus, aptus ad ;**  
**commūnis, conjunctus cum ;**  
**benevolus ergā**, or **in** with Acc.

**101.**

**(11) The Dative** occurs similarly with **Adverbs** and even **Nouns**.

**obtemperatio legibus.**

Obedience to the laws.

**congruenter naturae vivēre.**

To live in accordance with nature.

**sibi constanter dicere.**

To speak consistently with one's self.

**102.****Special Idioms.**

He threatened me with death.

**mortem mihi mīnātus est.**

He levies cavalry from the states.

**equites civitatibus imperat.**

He supplies the enemy with corn.

**frūmentum hostibus supeditat.**

He won no one's approval for his acts.

**facta sua nulli prōbavit.**

He pardoned me for these offences.

**haec peccāta mihi condōnavit.**

**103. dono and circumdo** admit of a double construction.

He surrounds the city with a wall. { **urbem muro circumdat.**  
**murum urbi circumdat.**



## EXERCISE XLVIII.

1. I was by your side on that day. The general lacked boldness, the soldiers courage. The tenth legion took part in that battle. Dumnorix commanded the cavalry. Few Romans survived the battle of Cannae. As consul he rendered great service<sup>1</sup> to the state.
2. Enthusiasm<sup>2</sup> for (of) fighting was infused<sup>3</sup> into the army.
3. Word was brought to Caesar that the Gauls were bent upon<sup>4</sup> a change<sup>5</sup> and were already approaching the borders of the province.
4. He told the chief he would pardon his brother for the past.
5. He promised Caesar not to make war on the neighbors.
6. He said he would intrust<sup>6</sup> himself and all his to the general's honor.
7. To my question he answered at great length.
8. Fortune favors the brave ; she is always against cowards.
9. Throwing themselves at the general's feet they promised never again to join the enemy, and always to come to his aid when he was in trouble.
10. The vanquished always envy the victors.

---

<sup>1</sup>Benefited much. <sup>2</sup>studium. <sup>3</sup>accedo, Act., or inicio, Pass. <sup>4</sup>studeo. <sup>5</sup>novae res. <sup>6</sup>permitto.

## EXERCISE XLIX.

## PERIODIC STYLE.

In the meantime the soldiers of the two legions, which had been left in the rear of the line to guard the baggage, on hearing of the battle, quickened<sup>1</sup> their speed, and were observed on the top of the hill by the enemy. And Titus Labienus, having got possession of the camp of the enemy, and observing from the higher ground that the enemy were trying to surround our men, sent the tenth legion to their support. When they<sup>2</sup> learned that the cavalry were in flight, and that the camp and legions and general-in-chief were in the greatest peril, they hurried to the rescue<sup>3</sup> as fast as they could. On their arrival, our men, even<sup>4</sup> those who had fallen down<sup>5</sup> spent with wounds, renewed the battle, leaning on<sup>6</sup> their shields ; then the camp-followers, seeing the enemy panic-stricken, even though unarmed,<sup>7</sup> met them in arms ; the cavalry, moreover, being anxious to wipe out<sup>8</sup> the disgrace<sup>9</sup> of their flight by their valour, placed themselves in front<sup>10</sup> of the soldiers in all quarters<sup>11</sup> of the battle.

---

<sup>1</sup>incito, 1 <sup>2</sup>Relative pronoun, connecting word. <sup>3</sup>Express the thought only. <sup>4</sup>etiam. <sup>5</sup>procumbo, 3, cubui, cubiturus. <sup>6</sup>innixus with Abl. <sup>7</sup>inermis, e. <sup>8</sup>deleo. <sup>9</sup>turpitudō, inis. <sup>10</sup>Place in front of, praeferre. <sup>11</sup>locus.

## EXERCISE L.

Detached style, as in the English for exciting details.

Pulio hurls<sup>1</sup> his pike into<sup>1</sup> the enemy, and transfixes<sup>2</sup> one of the multitude as he runs forward. Pierced through<sup>3</sup> and dying,<sup>4</sup> they cover<sup>5</sup> him with their shields; all together<sup>6</sup> hurl their darts at the foe, and give him no opportunity of retreating. The shield of<sup>7</sup> Pulio is pierced,<sup>8</sup> and a dart is fixed<sup>9</sup> in his belt.<sup>10</sup> This accident<sup>11</sup> turns aside his sheath<sup>12</sup> and delays his<sup>13</sup> right hand, as he attempts to draw<sup>14</sup> his sword, and the enemy surround him while at a disadvantage. Vorenus (though his) enemy,<sup>15</sup> runs up to his support,<sup>16</sup> and aids him<sup>17</sup> in his trouble.<sup>18</sup> The whole multitude at once turns from Pulio against him; they think the former has been killed by the dart. Vorenus keeps up<sup>19</sup> the fight with his sword, hand to<sup>20</sup> hand, kills one and drives the rest back a little; while he is pressing on too eagerly, stumbling<sup>21</sup> into a hollow,<sup>22</sup> down he falls. He, in turn, is surrounded, but Pulio brings him aid, and both safe, after killing quite a number, betake themselves within the fortifications, amid the loudest acclaim.<sup>23</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>immittere in. <sup>2</sup>traicio. <sup>3</sup>percutio, 3, cussi, cussus; or? <sup>4</sup>exanimatus; or? <sup>5</sup>protego, 3, xi, ctus. <sup>6</sup>universi. <sup>7</sup>Dat. of Reference. <sup>8</sup>transfigo, 3, fixi, fixus. <sup>9</sup>defigo. <sup>10</sup>balteus. <sup>11</sup>casus, us. <sup>12</sup>vagina, ae. <sup>13</sup>Dat. of Reference, pronoun not expressed. <sup>14</sup>educio. <sup>15</sup>Personal, private enemy. <sup>16</sup>succurro. <sup>17</sup>subvenio. <sup>18</sup>To be in trouble, laborare. <sup>19</sup>rem gerere. <sup>20</sup>comminus. <sup>21</sup>deiectus. <sup>22</sup>a lower place. <sup>23</sup>praise.

## EXERCISE LI.

It was just five days after the battle of the swamp that these seven companions were making their way through a valley, when<sup>1</sup> a party of Blackfeet,<sup>7</sup> who lay in ambush, started up with terrific yells. The horse of the young man who was in front wheeled round with affright, and threw his unskilful rider.<sup>2</sup> He was at once surrounded and slain on the spot. His comrades had fled on the first alarm, but two of them, seeing his danger, turned back, dismounted, and hastened to his assistance. One was instantly killed, the other was severely wounded, but escaped, to die<sup>1</sup> five days afterwards. The survivors<sup>3</sup> returned<sup>1</sup> to the camp, bringing tidings<sup>1</sup> of this new disaster.<sup>4</sup> The hardy<sup>5</sup> leader, as soon as he could bear the journey, set out on his return, and choosing a different route through the mountains, succeeded<sup>6</sup> in making the frontier in safety.

---

<sup>1</sup>Subordinate the sentences properly. <sup>2</sup>In English the same person may be referred to under different epithets. Do not do this in Latin. Represent the idea to be conveyed by a clause or phrase or single word, without any unnecessary word. <sup>3</sup>See 36. <sup>4</sup>If you think that the verbal ideas in this sentence are merely preliminary to the main thought of the next, treat them as such. <sup>5</sup>The learned Cato is **Cato, vir doctissimus**. <sup>6</sup>Express the thought only. <sup>7</sup>When a proper name cannot be Latinized, represent it by a suitable type word.

## LESSON XXIII.

104.

## THE GENITIVE.

The Genitive is the 'defining' case, its main use being to define or qualify the meaning of the word to which it is attached.

The Genitive is used with nouns, adjectives and verbs.

## Summary of Rules.

105.

## THE GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

## (1) Possessive Genitive.

Including  
*liber pueri.*  
*reginae filia* (Origin).  
*Ciceronis libri* (Author).

(2) **Subjective Genitive**, denoting the Subject or Agent of the action or feeling.

*serpentis morsus* ; *timor pueri.*

(3) **Objective Genitive**, denoting the Object toward which the action or feeling is directed.

*amor gloriae* ; *metus deorum.*

(4) **Genitive of the Whole** (usually called Partitive Gen.), denoting the whole of which a part is taken.

- (a) With substantives : *pars exercitus* ; *nihil temporis.*
- (b) With adjectives, especially in the comparative and superlative degree : *fortissimi militum.*
- (c) With numerals : *duo millia equitum* ; *primus omnium.*
- (d) With pronouns and neuter adjectives used as substantives :  
*quis hominum ? quis vestrum ? aliquid operis ;*  
*plus pecuniae ; tantum operis ; id temporis*—at that time ; *quid consilii*—what plan ; *quid rei*—what thing.
- (e) With adverbs used as substantives :  
*sapientiae parum*—too little wisdom.  
*quo gentium, ubi terrarum*—to what place on earth, where on earth.

**satis pecuniae ; (tu) maxime omnium**—(you) especially of all.

**eō temeritatis**—to such a pitch of rashness.

Obs. : *Other constructions* in place of the Gen. of the Whole are :

(a) The Abl. with **ex** or **de**.

**unus e militibus : quidam ex servis.**

This is the regular construction with **quidam** and cardinal numerals.

(b) **nos omnes**—all of us ; **tota Asia ; quot estis ?**

(**equites**) **qui pauci aderant**—few of whom were present.

If the two words are co-extensive you cannot have the Gen. of the Whole.

### (5) Genitive of Quality. (Descriptive Genitive.)

**vir summi ingenii ; puer decem annorum ; fossa quindecim pedum.** (See 108 [e] and 111 [6].)

### (6) Appositional Genitive.

**verbum voluptatis ; virtus continentiae.**

This Gen. is rare in Latin as compared with English.

Obs. : Remember such types as,

**urbs Roma ; pugna Cannensis ; summus mons.**

## 106. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, skill, recollection, participation, mastery, fulness, and their contraries.

**cupidus rerum novarum ; peritus belli** (skilled in).

**memor gloriae ; amans patriae ; pugnandi avidus.**

**militiae ignarus** (a stranger to warfare).

**sceleris particeps**—participating in guilt.

**sceleris expers**—unconnected with crime.

## 107. GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

### (1) The Gen. is used with

I. **misereor, miserescō**—pity, feel pity.

Obs. : **miseror, 1 ; commiseror, 1**,—express pity for, bemoan the lot of, take the Acc.

II. **memini, reminiscor, obliviscor.**

But (a) When referring to persons—

**memini**=I am mindful of, I make mention of, takes  
Gen.

=I still remember, I recall, takes Acc.

**Ciceronem memini.**

(b) When referring to things they take the Gen. or  
Acc.

But neuter pronouns and adjectives are regularly  
in the Acc.

**haec memini ; multa reminiscor.**

**mihi in mentem venit**=I remember, takes the Gen.

**venit mihi in mentem eius diei.**

**recordor**, 1.—I recall, almost invariably takes the Acc.

(2) The **Acc.** of the **Person** and **Gen.** of the **Thing** are  
used with

I. **admoneo, commoneo, commonefacio**—remind, admonish.  
**te amicitiae admoneo, commonefacio.**

But they take (a) The Acc. of a neuter pronoun or adjective.  
**hoc te admoneo.**

(b) *de* with the Abl. very frequently.  
**de proelio vos admoneo.**

II. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting.

**accuso, arguo, coarguo, reum facio, absolvere**, take the *Gen.* of  
the *Charge*.

**proditionis accusare, reum facere**—to accuse of, to prosecute for  
treason.

**furti**—of theft ; (**pecuniarum**) **repetundarum**—of extortion.

But (a) Sometimes *crimine*=on the charge ; or *nomine*=under  
the title, are expressed. The omission of these might  
explain the Gen.

(b) *de* with the Abl. is quite common.

**de ambitu reum facere**—to accuse of bribery.

**de pecuniis repetundis damnare**—to condemn for  
extortion.

So, **de vi**, assault ; **de caede**, murder ; **de veneficiis**,  
poisoning.



(c) Note *inter sicarios accusatus est*—he was accused of assassination.

(d) Verbs of Condemning, **damno**, 1 ; **condemno**, 1, take

(i) Gen. of the Charge.

**capitis damnatus** — condemned on a capital charge.

(ii) Abl. of Penalty.

**capite, morte, exilio damnatus**—condemned to death, exile.

III. **miseret, poenitet, pudet, taedet, piget** ;  
pity, repent, shame, weary, grieve, take

**Acc. of Person feeling.**

**Gen. of Person or Thing** that causes the feeling.

**eorum nos miseret**—We pity them.

**me stultitiae meae pudet ; me tui pudet.**

Obs. **me hoc pudet.** The neuter pronouns **hoc, illud, quod**, are used instead of the Gen.

Obs. **me poenitet vixisse, hoc fecisse, quod haec fecimus.**

(3) **interest** and **refert**, it is of interest, it concerns ;  
take the following constructions :

(a) The *Person Interested* in the Gen.  
**interest omnium ; illorum refert.**

But **meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā interesse.**

With possessive pronouns the *Abl. Singular Feminine of the Possessive* is used.

(b) The *Thing of Interest.*

**interest omnium fortiter pugnare.**

**meā hoc interest.** (Neuter Pronoun.)

**meā interest quid facias.** (Dependent Interrogative.)

**meā interest ut (ne) domum cras redeas.**

(c) The *Degree of Interest.*

By an Adverb. **magnopere, magis, maxime**, etc.

By a Neuter Adjective or Pronoun. **multum, plus, nihil, quantum, quid**, etc.

By a Gen. of Value. **magni, tanti, pluris**, etc.

(d) *The Object or End.*

**ad honorem nostrum.**

For our honor.

(4) (a) **Genitive of Value** (Indefinite Value).

Expressed by **tanti, quanti, parvi, magni, pluris, minoris**  
(sc. **pretii** = price).

**tanti amicitiam tuam habeo, facio, aestimo.**

So highly do I value your friendship.

(b) **Genitive of Price** (Indefinite Price).

Expressed by **tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris**, with verbs of  
buying (**emo**) and selling (**vendo**).

These uses of the Gen. with verbs correspond to the Gen. of  
Quality with nouns.

(5) **Verbs of Plenty and Want** sometimes govern the  
Genitive, but more commonly the Ablative.

**indigeo** generally takes the Gen.

**potior** sometimes takes the Gen., especially in the phrase

**potiri rerum**,—to get control of affairs.

## 108.

## IDIOMS.

(a) Everything is in the hands of      **omnia sunt hostium.**  
the enemy.

This house belongs to my      **haec domus est mei patris.**  
father.

**hostium** and **patris** are *Predicate Possessive Genitives*.

(b) An extension of this principle is seen in the following common  
idiom.

It is the duty of a judge to      **iudicis est verum sequi.**  
follow the truth.

This is the business of an      **hoc est praeceptoris.**  
instructor.

It is characteristic of a wise      **sapientis est.**  
man.

It is the height of madness.      **summae dementiae est.**

(c) It is my duty.      **meum est.**

In the case of Personal Pronouns the *Neuter* of the *Possessive*  
is used.

- |                       |                                     |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| (d) Any man may err.  | <i>cuiusvis hominis est errare.</i> |
| (e) A man of courage. | <i>vir fortis.</i>                  |
| A man of wisdom.      | <i>vir sapiens.</i>                 |
| A man of good sense.  | <i>vir prudens.</i>                 |

You cannot use the Genitive of Quality (105, 5) unless a qualifying word is attached to the noun.

### EXERCISE LII.

1. What news have you heard?
2. They rolled rocks of great weight down the mountains.
3. How much pleasure do we derive from learning?
4. Where on earth are we? Where on earth have we come to?
5. They spent much time in building the bridge.
6. How many of us are there?
7. One of the guides was a Greek, the other a Roman.
8. A certain one of the Gallic horsemen came to him and promised to carry the letter to Caesar.
9. He thought no time ought to be given the enemy for forming plans.
10. To such a pitch of daring did the enemy advance.

### EXERCISE LIII.

1. All of you, I know, hate men who are unmindful of a kindness.
2. He was a man of the highest talent, a great lover of truth, and most skilled in governing the state.
3. The Germans are very fond of carrying on war.
4. Caesar knew that the Gauls were desirous of change.
5. The judge thought that the accused was unconnected with the crime.
6. The soldiers received no reward from the general for their bravery.
7. Out of so many thousands, scarcely a few survived.
8. We few, who survive, swam to the shore.
9. The soldiers did not forget the wrongs inflicted by (=Subj. Gen.) the Helvetii on Rome (=Roman people, Obj. Gen.).
10. He said that being unused to sailing he was afraid of the sea.
11. A thanksgiving of fifteen days (duration) was decreed by the senate.

### EXERCISE LIV.

1. We pity the many great sufferings of the old man.
2. The Roman people will ever remember the old-time valor of the Helvetii.

3. We shall never forget your kindness.
4. We recall that day on which he was unanimously acquitted of extortion.
5. The conspirators were condemned on a capital charge.
6. One of the guides was accused of treachery, and condemned to death.
7. Are we not sorry for the condemnation of the innocent man and the acquittal of the guilty.
8. Do you not blush for the violation of your word and the desertion of your friend?
9. His safe return was of great importance to us all.
10. What interest had he in the banishment of all the good citizens?
11. He said it was his interest to return home as soon as possible.
12. He said it was of more importance to us that he should stay in the country.
13. The Alcmaeonidae were adjudged guilty of sacrilege, and were expelled from Attica.
14. He brought an action against the consul for bribery.
15. We are not only sorry for our folly, but also ashamed of it.
16. The successful conduct of the war is of the greatest importance to the state.
17. The enemy will soon regret their rashness, and be ashamed of the incompetence of their generals.
18. We are tired of hearing the same thing.

### EXERCISE LV.

1. Obedience to his general is manifestly the prime duty of a soldier.
2. It is characteristic of a wise man to yield to circumstances.
3. It was the height of folly to enter the pass without reconnoitring (use Abl. Abs., see 49, examples) the road.
4. We know that any man may err, but it is foolish to forget the past.
5. It is the duty of good children to obey their parents.
6. It is for us to-day to conquer or die.
7. Hannibal brought under his own jurisdiction all the tribes beyond the Ebro.
8. He thought it was the part of a conqueror to spare the vanquished.
9. It is the duty of a judge to condemn no man to death unheard.
10. He said it was the height of madness to adopt a course about matters of the greatest importance, on the advice of an enemy.
11. It is the mark of a coward not to resist the enemy as long as possible.

## EXERCISE LVI.

Horatius was going ahead (**princeps**) bearing the spoils in front of (**prae**) him. His sister, who had been betrothed (**desponsa**) to one of (**ex**) the Curiatii, met him at the gate. She alone of the multitude regrets her brother's victory. In a rage he draws his sword. "Away<sup>1</sup> hence with your untimely (**immaturus**) love to your betrothed (**sponsus**), forgetful of your brothers dead and (brother) alive, forgetful of your country: let<sup>2</sup> every Roman woman that shall mourn<sup>3</sup> an enemy, die." With these words he plunges his sword into (**transfigo**) his sister. All pitied the hapless maiden, and were ashamed of a deed so cruel and unholy. They remembered also Horatius' services. Nevertheless he was arraigned for murder. In that trial (**iudicium**) men were moved especially by Publius Horatius, the father, who proclaimed that he judged his daughter to have been slain justly. The people could not endure the tears of the father, and so they acquitted the son, more through admiration of his valor than from the justice of his cause.

---

<sup>1</sup>Go away, **abire**. <sup>2</sup>Let die, pres. subjunctive. <sup>3</sup>**lugeo**.

## LESSON XXIV.

## THE ABLATIVE.

## 109.

The Ablative is essentially an Adverbial Case. The relations it expresses are adverbial in character, and are very numerous.

It combines the uses of three cases originally distinct; the Ablative Case; the Instrumental Case; and the Locative Case.

Its uses accordingly are treated under these three divisions.

## Summary of Rules.

## 110

## A.—ABLATIVE PROPER.

## (1) Ablative of Motion away from;

Usually with a preposition '*ab*' or '*ex*' (94), except with

(a) Names of towns and small islands.

(b) **rure, domo, humo**. (See 94.)

## (2) Ablative of Source or Origin.

Used with **ortus, natus** (and in poetry with others of similar meaning).

**Jove natus; nobili genere ortus**.

- (a) **ex me natus.** Pronouns regularly take **ex**.  
 (b) **ortus ab, oriundus ab,** denote more remote descent.  
       **oriundi ab Sabinis.** Descended from the Sabines.  
 (c) **ex auro factus.** Made of gold.

The Abl. of *Material* is closely related to Abl. of *Source*.

### (3) Ablative of Separation.

Used with verbs and adjectives, sometimes with, sometimes without a preposition.

**culpā vacat.** He is free from fault.   **me timore liberat.**  
**metu vacuus. timore liber.**

- (a) **libero** usually; **solvo, egeo, careo, vaco**; and usually **liber, vacuus, nudus, solutus, inanis** and others are used without a preposition.  
 (b) **indigeo** regularly takes the Gen.

### (4) Ablative of Comparison

Is used instead of a nominative or accusative with '*quam*.'  
**puer puellā altior est.**

- (a) In other cases than nom. or acc. '*quam*' must be used.  
**mater puero quam puellae carior est.**  
 (b) **spe omnium celerius venit.** He came sooner than anyone had expected.  
**plus iusto,**—more than is right. (**iusto**, the neuter of the Adj. used as a substantive.)

It is thus used with **spes, opinio, fama, expectatio**, and with the neuter of adjectives used substantively as **iustum, aequum**.

- (c) **non longius mille et quingentis passibus aberat.**  
**Ariovistus vix plus duo millia passuum aberat.**  
**amplius horis quatuor fortissime pugnaverunt.**

**amplius, plus, minus, longius**, may or may not affect the syntax of the accompanying words.

### (5) Ablative of the Agent with 'a' or 'ab'

Is used with passive verbs to express the Person by whom something is done.



- (a) Collective nouns and abstract nouns personified, may take this construction.

a multitudine—a Fortunā.

- (b) A Secondary Agent is expressed by '*per*.'

Caesar per exploratores certior factus est.

### III. B.—INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE.

#### (1) Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means, or Instrument.

Cause—laudis amore ducimur. We are led by love of praise.

*Note the phrases—*

iussu meo.

By my order.

iniussu, rogatu, etc., Caesaris. Without the order, by request of Caesar.

Manner—with or without '*cum*.'

haec cum diligentia fecit.

haec magna cum diligentia fecit, or

haec magna diligentia fecit.

Use '*cum*' unless an emphatic adjective is added to the noun.

A great many adverbial phrases of manner occur without '*cum*.'

iure, iniuria, vi, fraude, silentio, arte, consilio, casu.

hoc, eo, nullo, quo modo; hac, ea, nulla, qua ratione.

hoc consilio, aequo animo; mea sententia; sua sponte; nullo negotio; pace tua; ea condicione; magnopere (= magno opere).

Means or Instrument;  
gladio interfectus est.

#### (2) Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.

bonis auspiciis.

Under good auspices.

longo intervallo sequitur.

This Abl. is closely allied to Abl. Absolute and both are closely allied to Abl. of Accompaniment.

#### (3) Ablative of Accompaniment is used with *cum*.

cum Caesare venit. cum telo venit.

- (a) *Observe the forms* mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum.

(b) In military language 'cum' may be omitted when an adjective except a numeral, is added to the noun.

omnibus copiis; ingenti exercitu; magnā manu.

cum exercitu; cum tribus legionibus; cum decimā legione.

#### (4) Ablative of Price.

auro patriam vendidit.

vile est viginti minis.

It is cheap at twenty minæ.

multo sanguine Poenis victoria stetit.

The victory cost the Carthaginians much blood.

(a) The words **magno**, **plurimo**, **parvo**, **minimo**, **vili**, **tantulo** (sc **pretio**), are used to denote *Indefinite Price*.

#### (5) Ablative of Measure of Difference;

Used with Comparatives and words implying comparison.

tribus pedibus altior; uno die longior; dimidio minor, a half less; tertiā parte maior; paulo post—a little (while) after (afterwards). aliquāto post.

(a) Compare the use of **quo . . . eo**; **quanto . . . tanto**; in 128 (quisque).

(6) Ablative of Quality or Description, with an Adjective.

vir summo ingenio; summā virtute adolescens;  
corpore fuit exigio, magno capite.

(a) Compare 105 (5) and 108 (e).

(b) A Genitive of a noun may take the place of an adjective.  
sunt specie et colore tauri.

#### (7) Ablative of Specification or Respect.

rex nōmine non pōtestate erat.

altero oculo captus.

Blind in one eye..

pēde claudus.

Lame of foot.

capite aeger; mōribus similes; mīnor nātū; nātū maximus.

This use is closely related to 'The Place Where.'

#### (8) Ablative Absolute.

## 112. C.—LOCATIVE ABLATIVE.

- (1) Abl. of the **Place Where.** (95 and 96.)
- (2) Abl. of the **Place from Which.** (94 and 110, 1.)
- (3) Abl. of the **Route by Which.**  
                   duabus simul portis eruptionem fecit.
- (4) Abl. of **Time When.** (80.)
- (5) Abl. of **Time Within Which.** (83.)

## 113. SPECIAL RULES.

The following Idiomatic uses of the Abl. may be explained under one or other of the preceding rules.

- (1) See 29.
- (2) The following **Adjectives** take the Abl.  
                   dignus, indignus, contentus, praeditus, frētus ; (and liber).  
                   The Abl. is one of *Specification* or *Instrument*.  
                   dignus morte ; suā sorte contentus ;  
                   ingenio magno praeditus ; virtute fretus.
- (3) opus est and usus est.      There is need.

Take the *Dat.* of the *Person* who needs ; the *Abl.* of the *Thing* needed. The Abl. is one of *Specification* or *Instrument*.

opus est nobis auxilio tuo.

## 114. Ablative with Prepositions.

ā or ab.	cum.	prae.
absque.	dē.	prō.
clam.	ē or ex.	sine.
cōram.	palam.	tenus.

## EXERCISE LVII.

1. They obtained their request for<sup>1</sup> a truce<sup>2</sup> by deception.<sup>3</sup>
2. Caesar thought the cavalry were terrified by the recent<sup>4</sup> battle and ordered them to follow the line.
3. Terrified both by the speed of our arrival and the departure of their friends, the Germans fled immediately into the camp.

4. They had left home and had crossed the Rhine with all their possessions.<sup>5</sup>
5. The rest hurled themselves into the river and there overwhelmed by fear, weariness and the force of the river perished.
6. The man is said to have been ten years younger than his brother.
7. The tower was forty feet higher than the fortifications of the town.
8. They were more than a thousand miles from home in a hostile and unknown country, hemmed in<sup>6</sup> on all sides by impassible rivers and mountains, without generals, without guides, without provisions.

<sup>1</sup> I obtain my request for, *impetro*, 1. <sup>2</sup> *indutiae*, *arum*. <sup>3</sup> *fraus*, *fraudis*.  
<sup>4</sup> *recens*, *tis*. <sup>5</sup> *fortunae*, *arum*. <sup>6</sup> *includeo*.

## EXERCISE LVIII.

### PERIODIC STYLE.

1. Having thrown a large quantity of arms down from<sup>1</sup> the wall into the trench and having nevertheless concealed and retained a third part in the town, the gates were thrown open<sup>2</sup> and they enjoyed<sup>3</sup> peace on that day.
2. On the first arrival of our army they made numerous sallies from the town and engaged in slight<sup>4</sup> battles with our men.
3. Thinking that our men would withdraw<sup>5</sup> the garrisons or at any rate would keep guard carelessly, they suddenly made a sally from the town in full force with those arms which they had retained and concealed.
4. The Aduatuci, of whom we have written above, were coming with all their forces to aid the Nervii, but hearing of this battle, they turned back home again.
5. They themselves were sprung from the Cimbri and Tentoni who, when marching into our province and Italy, left that baggage which they were not able to take with them this side of<sup>6</sup> the river Rhine and left six thousand men to guard it.
6. The Germans after trying every device<sup>7</sup> were neither able to contend in force with the Menapii on account of their lack of ships nor to cross the river on account of the outposts of the Menapii. Accordingly they pretended to return to their homes and districts. But after advancing a three days' journey they turned back again: and as the cavalry covered all this distance in one night they crushed the Menapii (still) ignorant (of the facts) and not expecting them, for having been informed about the departure of the Germans by scouts, they had gone back without fear across the Rhine into their own villages.

<sup>1</sup> Down from, *de*. <sup>2</sup> *patefacio*. <sup>3</sup> *utor*. <sup>4</sup> *parvulus*. <sup>5</sup> *deduco*. <sup>6</sup> *citra*.  
<sup>7</sup> Having tried all (things).

## LESSON XXV.

## PRONOUNS.

## 115. Personal.

The personal pronouns are expressed only for the sake of emphasis or contrast.

puerum ego laudo, tu culpas.

The personal pronoun of the third person is supplied by the demonstrative.

**nostrum** and **vestrum** are used only as 'Genitives of the Whole.'

**quis vestrum?**

Who of you?

Otherwise **nostri** and **vestri** are used.

**memor nostri.**

Mindful of us.

## 116. Demonstrative.

**is, idem, hic, iste, ille.**

**is** is the pronoun of mere reference.

Its great use is in the oblique cases representing him, her, it, them.

NOTE.—**eā lenitate usus sum ut.**  
**non is sum qui amer.**

I displayed such leniency that.

I am not the man to be loved. (See 156.)

**epistola filiæ quam filii**  
**est matri carior.**

The letter of the daughter is dearer to the mother than (that of) the son.

**unam rem explicabo**  
**eamque maximam.**  
**et is=and that too.**

One thing I will explain, and that too, a most important one.

## 117.

**idem**—the same.

NOTE.—**Cicero maximus orator**  
**erat idemque maximus**  
**philosophus.**

*And likewise, and at the same time, and also.*

## 118.

(a) **hic**—this near me.

**iste**—that near you; that of yours.

**ille**—that yonder.

(b) **hic**—my friend here, my client.

**iste**—your friend there, the defendant.

**iste**—is often used in contempt: 'that fellow,' 'that miserable fellow.'

**ille**—is a term of compliment and emphasis.

**ille Caesar.** The well-known, the famous Caesar.

**illa antiquitas.** That far off past, the good old times.

(c) **hic**—the nearer, the latter; **ille**—the more remote, the former.  
**pax, victoria; haec, illa.**

(d) **neque hic neque ille**—neither the one nor the other.

**et hic et ille**—both the one and the other.

**hi . . . illi = alii . . . alii**—some . . . others.

**ille** (and sometimes **hic**) = the following (in speech).

**illud magis vereor ne.** It is the following rather that I  
fear, lest.

## 119. Intensive or Emphatic.

**ipse.**

**ipse**—self; **ego ipse**—I myself.

**triginta ipsi dies**—exactly thirty days, just thirty days.

**adventu (suo) ipso**—by (his) mere arrival.

**ego ipse eum vidi**—I saw him with my own eyes.

**mea ipsius navis**—my own ship. **tuae ipsius naves;**  
**vestrae ipsorum naves.**

## 120. Possessive.

**meus, tuus, noster, vester, suus.**

**suus** is Reflexive Possessive, referring to the subject of the main verb = his (own), etc.

Otherwise his, her, its = **eius**; their = **eorum, earum.** (See 10.)

## 121. Reflexive.

The oblique cases of **ego** and **tu** are used as reflexives.

**me servo; vos servate.** Also **me ipsum servo; vos ipsos servate.**

## 122.

**sui** and **suus** may be either

### (a) Direct Reflexives.

**se amant. suos libros habent.**

when they refer to the subject of their own clause, whether principal or subordinate; or,



**(b) Indirect Reflexives.****me oravit ut se servarem.**

He besought me to save him.

**a me impetravit ut amico suo  
parcerem.**He obtained his request from me  
that I should spare his friend.

when they stand in a subordinate clause and refer to the  
subject of the principal clause.

**NOTE.—1. se amare non est laudabile.** Self-love is not praiseworthy.

**suos amicos amare.**

To love one's own friends.

**sibi placere.**

Self-satisfaction.

**sui** and **suus** sometimes = one's self, one's own, where the  
reference is not to any particular person.

**2. suā sponte.**

Of his own accord.

**virtus per se et propter se  
colenda est.**Virtue is to be cultivated *in  
itself* and *for its own sake*.**123.****Reciprocal.**

Latin has **no** Reciprocal pronoun (each other, one another).  
They use instead

**inter nos, inter vos, inter eos, inter se.****Belgae obsides inter se dederunt.****inter se cohortati** = exhorting one another.**alius alium** is also used to express the same idea.**EXERCISE LIX.**

1. The proud generally consult their own interests.
2. A slave of mine has run away ; he is in your province.
3. You lost Tarentum, I have retaken it.
4. He has killed both his father and his mother ; the former by  
poison, the latter by starvation.
5. This<sup>1</sup> only is true wisdom, to command oneself.
6. He was caught and killed on the very banks of the river.
7. You are the one who commended me.
8. They conversed together. We love one another.
9. The mind perceives that it is moved by its own power.
10. Justice should be cultivated for its own sake.

<sup>1</sup>The Demonstrative, like the Relative (see 125 [2]), agrees with the predicate noun.  
This was the reason why = **ea erat causa cur**.

## LESSON XXVI.

## 124. Relative.

**qui, who ; quisquis, quicumque, whoever.**

The Relative agrees with its antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but its *Case* is determined by the construction of its own clause.

## 125. Special Points.

- (1) **pater et mater qui adsunt** (pl. masc.). See 30, (1).  
**laus et gloria quae sunt amandā** (neut. pl.) See 30, (3).
- (2) **Thebae quod caput Boeotiae** Thebes, which is the capital of  
**est.** Boeotia.  
 The Rel. pronoun agrees with the predicate noun instead of its antecedent.
- (3) **qui est bonus, amatur.**  
**eos, qui sunt boni, amēmus** (let us love).  
 The antecedent may be omitted ; but only when it and the relative are in the same case.
- (4) **servum, quem habeo fidēlissimum, ad te mittam ; or,**  
**quem servum habeo fidelissimum, ad te mittam ; or,**  
**quem servum habeo fidelissimum, eum ad te mittam.**  
 I will send to you the most faithful slave I have.
  - (a) The antecedent is often put in the relative clause ; regularly so when the relative clause precedes.
  - (b) A superlative or other significant adjective, especially those denoting number or amount, is put in the relative clause.  
**elephanto, qui unus superfuerat,** Riding on the only elephant  
**vectus.** which had survived.
  - (c) When the relative clause precedes, the demonstrative pronoun (*eum*) is inserted to point a contrast or to emphasize the antecedent.
- (5) The boy you saw. **puer quem vidi.**  
 The relative is not omitted in Latin.
- (6) **multae civitates a Cyro defecerunt :** **id quod**  
**quae res** belli causa fuit.

Many states revolted from Cyrus and this (circumstance) was a cause of war.

'*id quod*' or '*quae res*' is used when the reference is not to a single word but to a whole clause. .

- (7) **clamoribus pugnantium per-** Frightened by the shouts of the  
**territi.** combatants—of those fighting—  
of those who were fighting.

The participle alone without the addition of the demonstrative indicates a group or class.

cedentes aggressi. Having attacked those (who were) retreating.

eos cedentes aggressi.      Having attacked them (mentioned  
before) while retreating.

But even in the latter case the demonstrative is usually omitted, especially when the participle has no other words attached to it.

### 126. Idioms in Connection with the Relative.

- (a) Such is your prudence. } quā es prudentiā.  
With your usual pru- } quae tuā est prudentiā.  
dence. } pro tuā prudentiā.

- (b) He is the same as he has  
ever been. **idem est qui semper fuit.**

'as' is a relative pronoun.

- (c) He was the first, last, only one to do or who did it.      **primus, ultimus, unus or solus haec fecit.**

- (d) I love one, or, a man, who      **eum, qui haec facit, amo.**  
       does this.

**I love men who do this.      eos, qui haec faciunt, amo.**

*hominem* or *homines* would mean 'men,' not women or animals.

- (e) My conqueror.                      qui me vīcit.  
The truth.                                (eā) quae vera sunt.

To those who questioned him } he replied. { **interrogantibus**  
To his interrogators } { **respondit.**

Those killed. (ei) qui interfecti sunt.

(f) What we can, let us do.    *ea quae.* } *possumus, faciamus.*  
    *id quod.* }

‘What’ is a Relative pronoun.

(g) We speak that we do know.    *id quod scimus dicimus.*

(h) He, as you all know, has    *ille, id quod omnes scitis, domum*  
    come home.     *rediit.*

For Idiomatic uses of the Relative with the Subjunctive, see 156.

### EXERCISE LX.

1. (He) who easily believes, is easily deceived.
2. What is right, is praised.
3. I have planted a tree, the fruit of which I myself shall never behold.
4. I hope that with your usual prudence you will pardon them.
5. He took with him the most faithful slaves he had.
6. I shall pluck the most beautiful flowers I see in your garden.
7. He rejects glory which is the most honorable fruit of true virtue.
8. The island is washed by the sea which you call ocean.
9. We all know he is the same as he has ever been.
10. He was the first who undertook to finish the business.
11. They were the last to arrive.
12. We are the only ones whom he spared.
13. The Volsci lost the best city they had.
14. Caesar in accordance with his usual sense of justice said that he pardoned their thoughtlessness and gave them the opportunity of departing home.
15. We who were the first to come to your aid in your youth will be the last to desert you in your old age.

Plant.	<i>sero, 3, sēvi, satus.</i>
Pluck.	<i>carpo, 3, carpsi, carptus.</i>
Reject.	<i>repudio, 1.</i>
Sense of justice.	<i>iustitia, ae.</i>
Thoughtlessness.	<i>imprudentia, ae.</i>

## LESSON XXVII.

127.

## Interrogative.

quis and qui.

quis est ille ?

Who is that man ?

quid fecit ?

What did he do ?

qui vir est ille ?

What kind of a man is he ?

qui puer fecit ?

Which boy did it ?

*quis* is used as a substantive, *qui* as an adjective.**ecquis**—is there anyone who ? Indefinite Interrogative.**quisnam**—who, pray ? who, indeed ? Emphatic Interrogative.**uter**—which of two ?

128.

## Indefinite.

**quis**—anyone ; is the weakest of the indefinites, and is used after **si, nisi, ne, num, quo, quanto.****aliquis**—some, somebody ; is a little more indefinite than **quis.****aliquot**—some persons, several.**quisquam, quispiam**—anyone.*quisquam*, and its corresponding adjective, '*ullus*,' are generally used in negative and conditional sentences, in interrogative sentences implying a negative, and in clauses involving comparison.

num quisquam haec dixit ?

num quemquam vidisti ?

si ullo modo fieri potest.

num quidquam morte tristius esse potest ?

**quīdam**—a certain one. **homo quīdam.**

Sometimes=a sort of, a kind of.

**quisque**, and, more emphatic, **unusquisque**—each one.

sui cuique amici cari sunt.

quod quisque scit, dicat. Let each one tell what he knows.

quo (or quanto) quisque est melior, eo (or tanto) est beatior.  
The better a man is, the happier he is.

For quo . . . eo, see 111 (5).

optimus quisque.

All the best.

quinto quoque anno.

Every four years. (See 90.)

**quīvis, quīlibet**—any one you please.

**uterque**—each of two ; both.

**uterque consul erat.** Both consuls were.

**ambo**—both together.

**nēmō**—no one.

No mortal—**nēmō mortālis** ; no Roman—**nēmō Rōmānus**.

**nescio quis**—some one or other. **misit nescio quem**.

Somehow or other ; in some way or other=**nescio quo pacto**  
or **modo**.

**alius**—**alius**—one—another.

**alter**—**alter**—the one—the other.

**alii**—**alii**—some—others.

**alteri**—**alteri**—the one party—the other party.

**alius alium cohortati.** Exhorting one another.

**alius aliud fēcit.** One did one thing, another another.

**alii alio fugiunt.** Some flee in one direction, others in  
another.

**alio ac tu est ingenio.** He is of a different disposition from  
you.

**aliter ac tu sentit.** His opinion is different from yours.

**cēteri**—the rest, all the others.

**reliqui**—the remaining, the rest, the others.

**singuli**—one by one. **nos singuli**—we as individuals.

**universi**—all together. **nos universi**—we altogether, we in the  
mass.

### EXERCISE LXI.

1. The more wealth a man has, the more he wants.
2. The more hurry, the less speed.<sup>1</sup>
3. All the most learned men believe in the immortality<sup>2</sup> of the soul.
4. The enemy soon fled ; some in one direction, others in another.
5. Some persons devote themselves<sup>3</sup> to one thing, others to another.
6. Which is the wiser, Caius or Balbus ?
7. Both armies were led into the field at the same time.
8. He holds a different opinion from you on this question.
9. Every man ought to defend his own friends.
10. Some are slaves to glory, others to money.
11. You may say anything you please here.
12. Did you see anyone at your home ?
13. Does any man believe liars ?
14. The best men always die with the most resignation.<sup>4</sup>



15. We ought to encounter<sup>5</sup> any danger for our country, our parents and our friends.
16. Whoever yields to the enemy shall be put to death.
17. He was braver than any of his friends.
18. The better the day, the better the deed.
19. Will not anyone tell you that it is the duty of a general to command?

<sup>1</sup>See 36. <sup>2</sup>The soul to be immortal (36). <sup>3</sup>*operam dare* with Dat. <sup>4</sup>*aequus animus*. <sup>5</sup>*oppeto* or *experior*.

## LESSON XXVIII.

### 129. Correlatives.

<i>idem est qui semper fuit.</i>	He is the same as he always was.
<i>tālis est quālis semper fuit.</i>	He is of the same character as he always was.
<i>tanti hodie sunt fluctūs quanti heri.</i>	The waves are as large to-day as (they were) yesterday.
<i>tanti erant fluctūs quantos nunquam antea videram.</i>	The waves were such as I had never seen before.
<i>tot erant milites quot maris fluctūs.</i>	The soldiers were as many as the waves of the sea.
<i>quo anno natus est Cicero, eodem Marius.</i>	Marius was born in the same year as Cicero.

- (a) The Relative Pronoun or Adjective has its own agreement or government.
- (b) The Relative Clause may precede when you wish to emphasize the Antecedent Clause.

### 130. Such.

Such . . . as, meaning size or quantity = *tantus* . . . *quantus*.

Such . . . as, meaning kind or quality = *tālis* . . . *quālis*.

Such = of such a kind, may be rendered by *eiusmodi*, *huiusmodi*, *istiusmodi*.

*coniurationem huiusmodi nunquam audiui.*

I never heard of a conspiracy of this kind = such a conspiracy.

'Such' when an Adverb = *tam*.

Such good men.

*tam boni viri, or  
tales tamque boni viri.  
tam bonus quam tu.*

As good as you.

So good a man as this.

This good man.

} *hic tam bonus vir.*

This great multitude.

So great a multitude as this.

} *haec tanta multitudo.*

*haec tanta et tam pernicio-  
coniuratio.*

This great and dangerous con-  
spiracy.

*eā celeritate milites ierunt ut hostes impetum sustinere non possent.*  
(Compare 150.)

### 131.

### Correlative Adverbs.

*eō naves rediērunt unde profectae sunt.*

*ubi natus es tu, ibi ego, or quo in loco . . . eodem.*

where —*ubi*

there —*ibi*

here —*hīc*

whence —*unde*

thence —*inde*

hence —*hinc*

whither —*quō*

thither —*eō, illuc*

hither —*hūc*

in which direction —*quā* ; in that or this direction —*eā* or *hāc*.

### 132.

1. *ego idem sentio ac tu—* : My opinion is the same as yours.  
*ac = quod.*

2. *ego aliter* or *aliā sentio ac tu.* My opinion or opinions is or are  
different from yours.

3. *res contra quam* (or *atque*) *exspectavi, ēvēnit.* The matter turned out contrary to  
my expectation.

(a) '*ac*' is sometimes used instead of *qui* with *idem*.

(b) '*ac*' is regularly and '*quam*' sometimes, used with *alius*,  
*aliter*, *contra*, and with other words where '*contrast*' is marked.

*ac* is used before consonants, *atque* before vowels.

### 133.

Fighting and winning the victory are quite different things.

It is one thing to fight, it is another to win the victory.

*pugnare est aliud, aliud est vincere.*

## EXERCISE LXII.

1. He says this is not the same as that.
  2. The waves were such as we had never seen before.
  3. You are of the same character as I have always believed you to be.
  4. The rule of expediency is the same as that of honor.
  5. He said that both you and I were the same as we had ever been.
  6. There are as many opinions as (there are) men.
  7. Will not your ship carry as heavy a cargo as mine?
  8. The storm was such as we had never seen before.
  9. Such guilty men as these were never pardoned before.
  10. Do not believe that you can return as easily as you made your journey.
  11. Our opinion about this matter is the same as that of the judges.
  12. The battle turned out contrary to everybody's expectations.
  13. Sowing and reaping are quite different things.
  14. To-morrow fighting will be the same as victory.
  15. We have crushed this great and dangerous conspiracy.
  16. The thing has been done in the same manner as before.
  17. He died in the same place as he had lived in boyhood.
  18. Neither our objects nor our hopes are the same as his.
-

## LESSON XXIX.

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 134.

The radical distinction between the Indicative and Subjunctive is that the Indic. deals with Facts, the Subj. deals with Conceptions of the Mind.

The Indic. deals with facts as

- (a) Statements.     **valet**—He is well.  
 (b) Suppositions.   **si valet**—If he is well.  
 (c) Questions.      **valetne?**—Is he well?

The use of the Subj. implies that the speaker or thinker is dealing with what is to his mind at least not facts or certainties but conceptions, doubts, wishes, purposes, results, or statements of others which he cannot or does not care to regard as facts.

The following contrasts will serve for the present :

<b>valet</b> —He is well.	<b>valeat</b> —May he be well.
<b>imus</b> —We are going.	<b>eāmus</b> —Let us go.
<b>dicit</b> —He says.	<b>dicat</b> —Let him say.
<b>venit</b> —He comes.	<b>veniat</b> —May he come.
<b>quid dico?</b> —What am I saying?	<b>quid dicam?</b> —What am I to say?
<b>milites misit qui urbem ceperunt.</b>	He sent soldiers who took the city.
<b>milites misit qui urbem caperent.</b>	He sent soldiers to take the city.

The Subj. is used extensively in subordinate clauses and in very many cases the form of the English affords no key at all to its use.

## 135. The Subjunctive in Independent Sentences.

The Uses of the Subjunctive in Independent Sentences are :

- (1) **Hortative** : used in the first person plural.

**eāmus**—Let us go.    **patriam amēmus**—Let us love our country.  
**nē hostibus cēdāmus**—Let us not yield to the enemy.

- (2) **Jussive** : used in the third person.

**exeant**—Let them leave.    **abeat**—Let him go.  
**nē audeant**—Let them not dare.

**(3) Prohibitive :** used in the second person.

*ne multa discas sed multum.* Do not learn many things but much.  
*nē rogāveris.* Don't ask.

The Perfect seems to be the more hasty, peremptory mode of address and to be accompanied with strong excitement or emotion.

The Present is used where there is an absence of agitation and largely with verbs of mere mental activity. Compare 166.

**(4) Optative :**

*vēniat* or *utinam vēniat.* May he come.  
*utinam vēnīret.* Would that he were coming.  
*utinam vēnisset.* Would that he had come. I wish  
 he had come.  
*ne vēniat, utinam ne vēnī-* May he not, etc.  
*ret, etc.*

A wish that may be fulfilled is expressed by the *Pres. Subj.*

A wish that cannot be fulfilled is expressed by the *Impf.* or *Plupf. Subj.*

The *Impf.* is used of *present* time ; the *Plupf.* of *past* time.

'*Utinam*' may or may not go with the *Pres.* but always accompanies the *Impf.* or *Plupf.*

**(5) Deliberative :**

*quid faciam ?* What am I to do ?  
*quid facerem ?* What was I to do ?  
*hunc ego non diligam ?* Am I not to love this man ?

**(6) Concessive :** where something is granted for argument's sake.

*sed haec omnia falsa sint.* But granted that these things are  
 false (what then?).

**(7) Conditional :** with the condition expressed or understood.

*dies dēficiat si vēlīm nu-* The day would fail me if I should  
*merare.* wish to recount.  
*crēdās.* You (one) would believe.  
*crēderēs.* You would have believed.  
*vidērēs.* You might have seen.

(8) **Potential** : expressing a possibility.

*dīcat*, or *dixerit aliquis*, or *Some one may say.*  
*quispiam.*

*vix crēdiderim.* I can scarcely believe.

*hoc affirmaverim.* This I would assert.

## (b) Or used as a polite or softened form of expression.

*vēlim adsis.* I wish, or could wish, you were here.

*vellem misissēs.* I could have wished you had sent.

It may be difficult sometimes to say under which head a particular subjunctive should be classified. It is the spirit of the subjunctive that should be grasped. There is an intimate connection running through all these uses. With slightly different shades of meaning, according to the context, '*hoc faciat*' might be 'let him do this' (Jussive); 'may he do this' (Optative); 'granted that he does this' (Concessive); 'he would do this' (Conditional); 'he may do this' (Potential). Some prefer to consider *crederes*, *videres* above as Potential rather than Conditional.

## EXERCISE LXIII.

What are we to do, soldiers? Are we to yield to a treacherous<sup>1</sup> foe? Would that the general-in-chief himself were here to-day to lead us against this foe! Let us conquer or die. Let us not fall into the hands of the most cruel enemy to be put to the sword or sent into slavery. Granted that their general is a man of consummate ability, and that the soldiers are men of the greatest courage. Are we to forget all our own glorious achievements and our own great generals? Who can believe that they are better armed than we, or can maintain the contest longer than a day? Oh that this day you may show the same courage under my leadership as you have often shown under other leaders in previous battles. Do not expect to see your homes, your wives, children and friends unless you win<sup>2</sup> the day. I could wish more were here. Then you might see the enemy less eager for the fray. Let them not dare, however, to trust in their own valor and disregard<sup>3</sup> the power of the immortal gods.

---

<sup>1</sup>*perfidus*. <sup>2</sup>*Tense*. <sup>3</sup>*contemnere*.



## LESSON XXX.

## STYLE.

**136            Limitations of the Period.**

We have stated in general terms the distinguishing characteristics of Latin prose as compared with English prose. We have also stated that the Periodic style is largely used in Descriptive and Narrative prose. It is likewise the characteristic style of the body of Oratory. The principles underlying its use are as follows :

The thought involved in a Period must represent a unit. The subordinate ideas must be connected in thought with the main idea and serve to illumine and give it its proper setting. The thought of the period must be absolutely clear—non ut intellegere possit sed ne omnino possit non intellegere curandum—and its clauses must be duly balanced. To clearness in thought and due balance and proportion of clauses must be added a third characteristic, harmony of sound and rhythm. This last, though easily noticeable in the great masters, is the most difficult to attain. The greatest care must be exercised that this indefinable charm to all discourse may in some measure be consciously produced. Beautiful, however, and majestic as the period undoubtedly is, its too frequent use would grow monotonous. The great masters knew that its beauty was enhanced by avoiding an excessive use of it.

**137.**

We will now consider style under two different aspects.

**1. Style as developed by and characteristic of different authors.**

You are aware that in English literature, writers of the same class—historians, for example—differ essentially in the individual style of their writings. Much depends on the mental training, temperament, disposition and character of the individual. The characteristic qualities of the writer are communicated to his expression. Style is a matter of individuality. A writer or speaker develops a style of his own, which will be characteristic of his discourse in general.

So in Latin literature. The Latin historians, Caesar and Livy for example, differ widely in the style of their writings. Caesar is

plain, simple and direct. His practical sagacity and directness of purpose are stamped upon his narrative. He wrote the history of his campaigns with the same directness and precision with which he carried them out in the field of war. Though lacking in glow and brilliance and polish, necessarily so from the circumstances of their composition, his writings contain the essentials on which the beginner must build. His simplicity, clearness, directness, as well as the purity of his language and style represent the model on which all sound historical writing must be based.

Livy, however, represents a higher stage in the subtle qualities of prose writing. While clear and powerful he is also animated, elaborate, polished. He had the advantage of being a born rhetorician. He is filled with the grandeur and dignity of his subject. The glory of the Roman republic, the greatness of the men and events he has undertaken to portray demand a lofty, dignified recital. His narrative is full. His style combines in the highest degree all the excellencies of Latin discourse. Grace, dignity, variety, life, vivacity mark every page. We feel the subtle charm of its beauty, harmony and variety but cannot explain it. He is the final master in historical writing.

2. Style as applicable to different subjects and different species of prose writing.

In English the style of dialogue is not the same as that of history. The studied phraseology and high sounding diction of oratory would ill befit the confidential spirit of epistolary writing. Dialogue, history, oratory, epistolary writing and philosophical discussion have each a style adapted to its own character, and in history and oratory where the subject and the mood of the speaker frequently vary, the style also must vary to be in harmony with these.

This is the reason why, as we have already stated, all historical writing is not periodic in its character. The endless prairie is an imposing sight to the traveller who beholds it for the first time, but its massiveness and bald uniformity soon cease to charm and he longs for a scene diversified by mountain and valley, hill and dale, forest and plain, lake and stream, each revealing and enhancing the beauty and colour of the other. So in discourse. Even the period would lose its stateliness of form and charm of sound and the narrative

become an uninteresting monotony, void of all life and naturalness, unless each changing scene and mood were clothed in a becoming style of form and diction. It is this characteristic that gives to the style of Livy its great charm, his happy adaptation of style to the ever-varying phases of the narrative. This, in fact, is the essence of style, viz : the skilful adaptation of expression to thought.

## 138.

## ORATORICAL STYLE.

*Id quidem perspicuum est non omni causae nec auditori neque temporis congruere orationis unum genus. Nam et causae capitis alium quemdam verborum sonum requirunt, alium rerum privatarum atque parvarum : et aliud dicendi genus deliberationes, aliud laudationes, aliud iudicia, aliud sermones, aliud disputatio, aliud historia desiderat. Cicero de Oratore III, 55.*

Oratory is such a complex type of discourse, enlisting in its service thought, emotion, and impulse alike that only the most meagre treatment can be given it here. As compared with English oratory, Roman oratory may be said to be in general more exclamatory, and to deal more in the rhetorical question. It appeals more to feeling and less to reason. It has a fire and energy unknown to us. This was undoubtedly due to the passion of the times, was a result of the spirit of the national character, and was on a par with their political and social life in general. The Romans realized to a greater extent than we do the power of oratory to move and influence men, and so were more assiduous in its cultivation. The whole field was studied and the principles evolved carefully practised. As exemplified by the masters the whole range of feeling, from light jest to tragic vehemence, had its accompanying tone, gesture, expression, and style of discourse.

In oratory, as in history, the Periodic style is largely used in description and narration. The period of oratory differs, however, in some respects from the period of history. The diction is more studied and ornate. The antithetic balance of clauses plays an important part. Euphony, modulation of phrase, and rhythm are more necessary for a hearer than for a reader and must be most carefully considered. Perspicuity in the period is even more necessary in oratory than in history. The meaning of the orator must be grasped with the utterance of the words. The meaning of

the historian, if not clear at the first reading, may be revealed by a second.

The exigencies of oratory make many limitations on the use of the period. In the recital of detailed facts, in the quick play of question and answer, in all expression of strong feeling, anger, indignation, invective, irony, etc., the period either has no place at all or plays a very unimportant part.

Cicero is the great model, unsurpassed and unapproachable in the oratorical, epistolary and philosophic styles. Even he attained to this eminence only after years of earnest study under eminent Greek rhetoricians, and by the most strenuous endeavor on his own part. Only by constant study and memorizing and reciting aloud of fine passages can we drink in the music of his periods and hope to reproduce in some slight measure the sweet euphony of words, the nice balance and modulation of phrases, the proportion and sonorous ring of sentences.

As in all art, the acquirement of style in writing is a matter of growth and development. The aptitude for it may be very small or very great. The highest results are only attained by geniuses. But for all the only hope of success lies in constant observation and imitation. The writing of all Latin prose, and particularly continuous prose, is an art and subject to the principles underlying art in any other department. In the writing of Latin prose the higher qualities are, we might almost say, beyond the attainment of the best modern scholarship. In it few geniuses are developed; it ever continues to be a conscious effort. There is a standard, however, to which every student of Latin prose should and can with reasonable application attain. Every student should know and be able to put in practice the great essentials, and these include the proper and effective expression of the thought with a certain grace, freedom, and precision. From the very beginning he must observe the distinguishing characteristics of all good Latin prose and leave to future study of the great masters the degree of artistic excellence to which he may attain; and it is surprising what constant practice and care will achieve even for those endowed with the most meagre natural gifts. In this, as in all art, the Aristotelian maxim holds, "A man becomes a harp-player by playing on the harp."

## 139.

## EPISTOLARY STYLE.

In consonance with the familiar character of epistolary discourse its style is characterized by ease, simplicity, and freedom from all appearance of studied effect or rhetorical effort. Even the arrangement of words is of the simplest and most natural order.

## LESSON XXXI.

N.B.—The exercises on this lesson may be postponed until Lessons xxxvi and xxxvii have been studied.

## 140.

The following short letter from Pliny to his friend Fabius Justus will serve to illustrate the free, easy, familiar style of epistolary writing:—

## C. Plinius Fabio Iusto Suo S.

Olim mihi nullas epistolas mittis. nihil est, inquis, quod scribam. at hoc ipsum scribe, nihil esse quod scribas, vel solum, illud unde incipere priores solebant, 'si vales bene est; ego valeo.' hoc mihi sufficit; est enim maximum. ludere me putas? serio peto. fac sciam quid agas, quod sine sollicitudine summa nescire non possum. vale.

C. Plinius sends greeting (s. = *salutem dat*) to his (dear friend) Fabius Justus.

You send me no letters of late. I have nothing to write, say you. Well, write just that, that you have nothing to write, or merely that trite old phrase with which your former letters used to begin, 'if you are well, it is well. I am well.' That satisfies me; indeed it is a great deal. Think you I am fooling? I am really in earnest. Be sure and let me know what you are doing, for I cannot be ignorant of this without the greatest anxiety. Goodbye.

## EXERCISE LXIV.

## CICERO TO MARCELLUS. GREETING.

Although there was<sup>1</sup> nothing new for me to write to you, and I was rather beginning already to look for a letter from you (= your) or even you yourself, still when Theophilus was setting out I could not help



giving some kind of a letter<sup>2</sup> to him. Be sure then and come home as soon as possible ; for, believe me, your arrival will be pleasing not only to us but to everybody. I know, of course, that you will see much that will displease you, still I am confident you can be of great service to the republic at this crisis. I should very much like you to inform me when to look for you. Take good care of your health. Good bye.  
(Given at) Rome, June 1st.

<sup>1</sup> In Roman letters tenses were often used applicable to the time of the receipt of the letter. The reader looked back to the time at which the letter was written.

<sup>2</sup> I was not able to give nothing of a letter.

### EXERCISE LXV.

The following letter is from one of the papyri unearthed some time ago by Messrs. Grenfel and Hunt from the ancient city of Oxyrhyncus, in Egypt. It is a letter from a boy, evidently a petted darling, to his father, and sounds strangely modern, though it is at least sixteen hundred years old.

#### THEON, TO HIS FATHER, THEON. GREETING.

It was a fine thing of you not to take me with you to the city. If you won't take me with you to Alexandria I won't write you a letter, or speak to you, or say good-by to you ; and if you go to Alexandria I won't take your hand, nor ever greet you again. That is what will happen if you won't take me. Mother said to Archelaus, 'It quite upsets him to be left behind.' It was a good thing of you to send me presents on the 12th, the day you sailed. Send me a lyre, I implore you. If you don't, I won't eat, I won't drink ; there now.

### EXERCISE LXVI.

#### BALBUS TO CAIUS. GREETING.

I received your letter dated at (given from) Athens, in which you said you intended to go to Corinth to see the games. Do you, I intreat, be sure and let me know whether you saw our friend Brutus there and when he intends sailing to Smyrna. I am now on the most intimate terms with Calidius. I have asked him to dine (**ceno, I.**) with me (**apud me**) the next time he comes to the city. My father and mother have gone to spend the winter at Naples. You laugh ? It is no laughing matter (**ridiculus**). I need your presence here at an early date (**adventus maturus**). What else shall I write to you ? What (else) ? There are many things, but for another time. If you wish to know what they are, be sure and reply (**rescribo**) at once. This at any rate I ask you to do, and also to inform me when I am to expect you. Take good care of your health. Brundisium, Dec. 5th.



## LESSON XXXII.

### FINAL CLAUSES.

#### I41. ut, ne, quo.

A Final Clause is one which expresses purpose or end (*finis*) to be attained.

The commonest way of expressing purpose in English is by the infinitive.

*Never use the infinitive in Latin to express purpose.*

#### I42.

There are in all *eight ways* of expressing purpose.

He sent ambassadors...to sue for peace.

legatos misit	...qui pacem peterent.	(Rel. with Subj.)
	...ut pacem peterent.	(ut with Subj.)
	...ad pacem petendam.	(Gerundive.)
	...pacis petendae causā.	(Gerundive.)
	...pacem petitum.	(Supine.)
	...pacem petituros.	(Fut. Part. rare.)

In the necessary cases the Gerund would be substituted for the Gerundive.

..to persuade the enemy.  
ad hostibus persuadendum.  
hostibus persuadendi causā.

He sent soldiers ..to plunder—for the sake of plundering.  
ad praedandum,  
praedandi causā.

#### I43.

cives fortissime pugnāvērunt nē urbs caperētur.

that the city might not be taken.  
to prevent the city being taken.

**ne** = in order that...not; it expresses Negative Purpose.<sup>1</sup>

It is often translated by 'to avoid,'  
'to prevent.'

---

<sup>1</sup> In cases where '**ut non**' occurs in a final clause, the '**non**' negatives not the whole clause but some single word.

In Final clauses—that . . . not = **ne**.  
 that . . . nobody = **ne quis**.  
 that . . . nothing = **ne quid**.  
 that . . . no = **ne ullus**.  
 that . . . never = **ne unquam**.

## I44.

When a second final clause is added it is introduced by '*neve*' or '*neu*.'\*

**ne caperetur neve interficeretur.** That he might not be taken nor killed.  
**ne urbs caperetur neu quis interficeretur.** That the city might not be taken and that no one might be killed.

## I45.

Instead of the Relative Pronoun, a Relative Adverb may introduce the final clause.

**ubi=ut ibi; unde=ut inde; quō=ut eō.**

They had no place to betake themselves to.

**non habebant quo se recipere.**

They had not whither they might betake themselves.

## I46.

**militibus praemia promisit quō** He promised rewards to the soldiers that they might fight more bravely.  
**fortius pugnarent.**

Use '**quo**' for **ut** when a comparative follows.

**quo**=by which, whereby.

## I47.

As has been said (see 39), a final clause is often placed after the principal verb when the purpose of the act is logically subsequent to and of more consequence than the act itself, and in this case such words as *idcirco*, *ob eam causam*=for this reason; *eo consilio*=with this object, are very often put in the principal clause to prepare our minds for and emphasize the final clause.

But when the Final clause represents the Actuating Aim or Motive, and is closely associated with the mind of the subject, it

---

\* Occasionally by **neque** when **ut** stands in the first clause.

takes its logical position before the principal verb and in close connection often with the subject.

**hoc proelio facto, ut reliquas copias Helvetiorum sequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum curat atque ita exercitum traducit.**

## 148. SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

### Review 14.

He sends	}	soldiers, to take the city. = that they may take the city. = <b>ut urbem capiant.</b>
He has sent		
He will send		
He will have sent		
He was sending	}	soldiers, to take the city. = that they might take the city. = <b>ut urbem caperent.</b>
He sent		
He had sent		

1. The first group of four tenses take the same word (may) in the final clause ; the last group of three take the same, but different from the former (might).

The tenses divide themselves into two classes :

The first, PRIMARY ; the second, HISTORIC.

There are two Perfect tenses.

**amavi**=(a) I have loved ; Pres. Pf., a Primary tense.

(b) I loved ; Historic Pf., an Historic tense.

The Primary tenses are—Pres., Pres. Pf., Fut., and Fut. Pf.

The Historic tenses are—Impf., Hist. Pf., and Plupf.

2. The law of Sequence of Tenses is established for your guidance in sentences where you have an indicative in the principal, and a subjunctive in the subordinate clause.

A Primary tense is followed by a Primary.

An Historic tense is followed by an Historic.

The first case is called *Primary Sequence*.

The second case is called *Historic Sequence*.

3. The *Historic Present* may take either sequence, Primary, by virtue of its form ; Historic, by virtue of its meaning.

4. In ordinary final clauses only two tenses are used.

Present Subj. for Primary Sequence.

Impf. Subj. for Historic Sequence.

### 149.

In all the different uses of the subjunctive mood contemporary action is expressed either by the Present tense in Primary sequence or by the Imperfect tense in Historic sequence. Contemporary action is regarded as in essence continuous action. It is continuous during the period of time represented by the principal verb. This observation is of great value in sentences where the English is no guide to the Latin Idiom.

## EXERCISE LXVII.

1. Translate in all possible ways :

- (a) He sent soldiers to storm the camp.
- (b) He will send cavalry across the river to plunder.
- (c) They said he ought to have returned to the city to stand for the consulship.

- 2. That he might take the camp more easily he sent two thousand cavalry along with the infantry.
- 3. He kept his men in camp all day that no one might announce anything to the enemy.
- 4. To avoid being banished he was pretending to be mad.
- 5. He has lived virtuously that he may die with resignation.
- 6. He told many falsehoods about his age that he might appear younger than he really was.
- 7. He sent his lieutenant to see (74) that a bridge was built over the river.
- 8. He praised men in his lifetime that he might be praised by them after his death.
- 9. Caesar sent the cavalry to pursue those who had fled.
- 10. He will return in the night that none may see him.
- 11. He committed suicide that he might never see his country overthrown.
- 12. Since the woods were burned down, the enemy had no place to betake themselves to.

## EXERCISE LXVIII.

1. He promised to return by the fifth day in order to aid them against the enemy.
2. He will return to the city at once that he may not be accused of treason in his absence.
3. He is said to have forgiven many men in his lifetime that after his death they also might forget his many crimes.
4. Without orders from Caesar the cavalry returned to the same hill, which they had left a few hours before, in order that they might attack the enemy from the rear.
5. Setting out into another quarter for the purpose of exhorting his men, he came upon them fighting.
6. Caesar determined that he ought to punish them the more severely that in the future the rights of ambassadors might be observed by the barbarians.
7. In order that the boy might be ashamed of his idleness, the master pretended to be angry.
8. To prevent the enemy from capturing the citadel and slaying the guard the townspeople broke down the bridge in the night-time.
9. He spared the conspirator whom he might have put to death that his own crimes might be pardoned.
10. To avoid being persuaded that his brother was guilty of treason, he voluntarily went into exile.
11. They had no other ships in which to sail home.
12. This is the place for you to hold.

## EXERCISE LXIX.

In the first place, Fellow-citizens, Mithridates fled from his kingdom in like manner<sup>1</sup> as the famous<sup>2</sup> Medea is said once upon a time<sup>3</sup> to have fled from the same Pontus. For<sup>4</sup> they aver<sup>5</sup> that in her flight she<sup>4</sup> scattered<sup>6</sup> her brother's limbs<sup>7</sup> in order to prevent her father's speedy pursuit.<sup>8</sup> So Mithridates in his flight left behind in Pontus a vast quantity of silver and gold and most beautiful things, which he had received from his ancestors and which he himself in the previous war had plundered<sup>9</sup> from all Asia and stored<sup>9</sup> in his kingdom, in order that, while our soldiers were<sup>10</sup> gathering everything up (all) too carefully, he personally<sup>11</sup> might escape from their hands.

---

<sup>1</sup>sic—ut. <sup>2</sup>ille. <sup>3</sup>quondam. <sup>4</sup>may be expressed by rel. pron. <sup>5</sup>praedico 1. <sup>6</sup>dissipo 1. <sup>7</sup>membrum. <sup>8</sup>Adapt to Latin Idiom. <sup>9</sup>One finite verb, diripio, congero. <sup>10</sup>Translate by "are gathering." <sup>11</sup>himself.

## LESSON XXXIII.

## CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

**150. ut, ut non.**

A consecutive clause is one which expresses consequence or result.

The citizens fought so bravely that the city was not taken.

Our men advanced with such speed that the enemy were not able to sustain the charge.

He was so good as to be loved by all.

In all these cases the consecutive clause is translated by *ut with subj.*

**tam fortiter cives pugnāverunt ut urbs non capta sit.**

**eā celeritāte nostri iērunť ut hostes impetum sustinēre non possent.**

**tam bonus erat ut ab omnibus amārētur.**

**151.**

In consecutive clauses—that not=**ut non.**

that nobody=**ut nēmō.**

that nothing=**ut nihil.**

that no=**ut nullus.**

that never=**ut nunquam.**

**152.**

**ut non captus neque interfectus sit.** So that he was not taken nor killed.

**ut urbs non capta nec quisquam interfectus sit.** So that the city was not taken nor was anyone killed.

nor; and not=**neque.**

nor any one; and no one=**nec quisquam.**

nor anything; and nothing=**nec quidquam.**

nor any; and no=**nec ullus.**

nor ever; and never=**nec unquam.**

**153.**

A relative pronoun or relative adverb may also introduce a consecutive clause.

**Nemo tam audax est qui hoc faciat.** No one is so bold as to do this.



## 154.

Generally some such word as *tam*, *ita*, *adeo*, *tantus* is put in the principal clause.

'So' modifying a verb=*ita*, *sic*, or, *adeo*=to such an extent or degree.

'So' modifying an adjective or adverb=*tam*.

## 155.

## Sequence of Tenses.

The tense of the verb in a consecutive clause must be determined by the sense of the sentence. The English will be a sufficient guide if the following points are observed:

(1) The *Impf. Subj.* like the *impf. indic.* denotes continued, repeated or progressive action.

(2) The *Perf. Subj.* like the *perf. indic.* represents two tenses, the *Pres. Pf.* or *Pf.* with 'have' and the *Hist. Pf.* representing a single, definite act or fact.

(3) *Future Subjunctives* are formed by combining the *fut. part.* with the *subj.* of '*sum*,' as

*amātūrus sim, fuerim, essem.*

milites tam fortiter	{	pugnant—fight, are fighting—	} ut ab omnibus laudentur—	
		pugnāvērunt—have fought—		that they are praised by
		pugnaverunt—fought		all.

*milites tam fortiter*

*pugnaverunt*—fought; *ut ab omnibus laudārentur*—were praised.

*Continuous or contemporaneous action.*

*ut ab omnibus laudati sint*—were praised.

*Single definite act or fact.*

*tam subito impetum fēcērunt ut hostes statim fūgerint*

milites tam fortiter	{	pugnant	} ut omnes laudaturi sint—	
		pugnaverunt		that all will praise, are likely to
		pugnaverunt		praise them.

*milites tam fortiter pugnaverunt ut, nisi nox intervēnisset, hostes terga versuri fuerint—*  
that, unless night had intervened,  
the enemy would have turned their  
backs.

## EXERCISE LXX.

1. He lived so virtuously that he died with resignation.
2. He was so diligent that he lost no time in play.
3. The multitude of stars is such that they cannot be numbered.<sup>1</sup>
4. He said that he had lived so as to quit life with resignation.
5. As (*ut*) we have said before, the storm was such that no ship could reach the harbor.
6. Caesar fired the woods so that the enemy might not have any place to betake themselves to.
7. The cavalry charged so fiercely that the enemy had no time to prepare themselves for battle.
8. He told so many falsehoods that no one believed him then, and that no one will ever believe him hereafter.
9. He was so ready<sup>2</sup> to forgive those who injured him that after his death he is praised even by his enemies.
10. The enemy charged so fiercely that had not reinforcements come up, not one of us would have escaped.
11. He was so good a man that we are never likely to see his equal<sup>3</sup> in this world.<sup>4</sup>
12. I returned home with the intention of benefiting you and yours, but so hated am I by<sup>5</sup> your enemies that I am likely to injure you, whom I wished to benefit; and benefit your enemies, whom I wished to injure.
13. We were hurrying on, expecting soon to meet the enemy, when we saw the spy, whom we had sent ahead, coming back without any arms; he was severely wounded on the head, and was so weak that he could scarcely walk.

---

<sup>1</sup> *numero*, I.      <sup>2</sup> = was willing, *volo*.      <sup>3</sup> *eius par* or *similis*, see 100 (10), (*a*).

<sup>4</sup> = life, *vita*.      <sup>5</sup> So hated am I by = *tanto odio sum*, with *Dat.* (99, [8]).

## LESSON XXXIV.

## 156. CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC.

Compare

non is sum qui hoc fēci. I am not the man who did it.

non is sum qui hoc faciam. I am not the man to do it.

The relative clause with the Indic. makes a plain statement of fact about an antecedent which the relative directly represents.

The relative with the Subj. characterizes a class of persons implied in the antecedent which the relative *generically* represents.

Such a relative is called a *Generic Relative*, and is followed by the Subj. in a *Clause of Characteristic*.

Such clauses are introduced by

est qui ; sunt qui ; nēmō est qui ; nullus, ūnus, sōlus est qui ;  
quis est qui, etc.

sunt qui putent. There are some who think.

erant qui putarent. There were some who thought.

nemo est qui putet. There is no one who thinks.

nihil est quod dicere velim. There is nothing which I care to say.

In all these clauses the relative means 'of such a kind or class as to,' and the Subj. is closely allied to the Subj. in Consecutive clauses.

## 157. 'qui' is similarly used with the Subj.

(a) After dignus, indignus, idōneus.

dignus est qui amētur. He is worthy to be loved.

idoneus est quem imitēris. He is a suitable person for you to imitate.\*

(b) After comparatives with quam.

maior est quam cui resisti possit. { He is too great to be resisted.  
greater than to whom it is  
able to be resisted.

---

\* The same Latin and the same English might be used to denote Purpose.

## 158.

Under clauses of Characteristic belongs the phrase

**quod sciam.**

As far as I know.

Clauses of Characteristic may be introduced by '*quin*' = *qui non*.

**nemo est quin sciat.**

There is no one but knows.

'but' is an Indefinite Negative Relative.

## EXERCISE LXXI.

1. There are some who say that I have been too lenient a consul.
2. He was not the man to be terrified by danger.
3. How few there are who dare do this.
4. He was not a suitable person to be raised to the throne.
5. Their deeds are too great to be told.<sup>1</sup>
6. The stones were too large to be moved.
7. The ships were too strong to be injured.
8. I am not the man to obey unjust laws.
9. No one, so far as I know, will deny that duty is sometimes at variance with interest.
10. These favors are too great for me to requite.
11. Nor is there anyone who would say this.
12. There was no supply of ships such as was suitable for this purpose.
13. They did nothing which was unworthy of themselves.
14. They committed no act which would reflect discredit on themselves.
15. He is not the man to tell a falsehood.
16. There was no one to whom he did not give a reward.

Lenient.

**mitis.**

How few there are who.

**quotusquisque est qui** (sing.).

To be raised to the throne.

**regnum excipere ; rex fieri.**

Favor.

**beneficium.**

Requite.

**gratiam referre** (Dative).

---

<sup>1</sup> Their deeds are greater than which are able to be told.

## LESSON XXXV.

## SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

159. With *ut* and *ne* Definitive or Explanatory.

## I.

<i>moneo te ne hoc facias.</i>	I warn you not to do this.
<i>milites hortatus est ut fortiter pugnārent.</i>	He exhorted the soldiers to fight bravely.
<i>a Caesare impetravit ut sibi parcēret</i>	He obtained his request from Caesar to spare him.

Such verbs that take '*ut*' or '*ne*,' with Pres. Subj. or Impf. Subj. according to 149, to express the English infin. are :

ask, intreat—*oro, rōgo, peto* (*ab*), *opto, prēcō* (*ab*) ;  
 advise, warn, exhort—*moneo, admoneo, hortor, adhortor* ;  
 persuade—*suādeo, persuādeo*. (*Dat.*)  
 command—*impero, mando, praecipio, edico*. (All govern *Dat.*)  
 decree—*dēcerno, statuo, constituo* ;  
 strive, effect—*video, provideo*, (take care) ; *facio, efficio* ; *impetro*,  
 (obtain a request), *id ago*—I make it my aim ; *operam*  
*do*—I take pains to ;  
 allow—*permitto*. (*Dat.*)

Obs. *ut* is sometimes omitted and such construction is probably the earlier.

## 160.

The following, however, take *Acc.* with *Infin.* or *Supplementary Infin.* See 27.

*vōlo, cupio* ; *iubeo* ; *conor* ; *sīno, patior* (allow) ; *prohibeo, vēto* (forbid).

## 161.

<i>ad Galliam proficisci statui.</i>	I determined to set out for Gaul.
<i>statui ut lēgātus ad Galliam proficisceretur.</i>	I determined that the lieutenant should set out for Gaul.

With *statuo, constituo, decerno* use the *Infin.* when the action of the *Infin.* refers to the subject of the main verb ; otherwise use *ut* with *Subj.*

## II.

162. Verbs of Fearing : **vereor**, **timeo**, **metuo**, **periculum est**, etc.

<b>vereor ne veniat.</b>	I fear (that) he will come.
<b>vereor ut veniat.</b>	I fear (that) he will not come.
<b>veritus sum ne venīret.</b>	I feared that he would come.
<b>veritus sum ut venīret.</b>	I feared that he would not come.*
<b>vereor ut rediturus sit.</b>	I am afraid he is not likely to return.

With verbs of Fearing **ne** = that or lest ; **ut** = that . . . not.

## III.

## 163. Impersonal Verbs and Phrases.

<b>accidit ut ego abessem.</b>	It happened that I was absent.
<b>fieri potest ut errēmus.</b>	It is possible that we are mistaken.
<b>tantum abest ut eum culpem ut etiam laudem.</b>	So far am I from blaming him that I even commend him.

Such verbs and phrases are :

It happens that—**accidit, ēvenit, contingit ut.**

It was added that—**accēdit ut.**

It follows that—**sequitur ut** ; the next thing is—**proximum est ut.**

Thus it happens that—**ita fit ut.**

How happens it that?—**quī fit ut?**

It is possible that—**fieri potest ut.**

It is quite impossible that—**nullo modo fieri potest ut.**

It remains that—**reliquum est, restat ut.**

So far from . . . that—**tantum abest ut . . . ut.**

I will not allow myself to—**non committam ut.**

To succeed in ; to contrive to—**efficere ut.**

Necessarily—**necesse est (ut).**

The consequence of this was—**ex quo factum est ut.**

The Subj. is sometimes used with **necesse est, oportet, licet, velim, nolim** and **ut** is generally omitted. **licet venias**—you may come.

---

\* When the thought requires it the Perf. Subj. is used after verbs of fearing.

**vereor ne Romam, sic cunctantibus nobis, Hannibali ac Poenis toties servaverint maiores nostri.**

**vereor ut satis diligenter actum in senatu sit de litteris meis.**



## 164. Substantive Clauses introduced by Quod followed by the Indicative.

(a) *magnum est hoc quod victor victis pepercit.*

*quod* = the fact that ; that.

(b) At the beginning of a sentence '*quod*' sometimes has the force of 'as regards the fact' that.'

*quod me Agamemnona aemulari putas, falleris.*

NOTE.—Distinguish carefully between the sentences of each group in Ex. LXXII, B. In 'We warned them not to cross the river,' the *Infin.* represents an Imperative in O.R.—do not cross the river—; in Latin it is called *Obliquè Petition.*

In 'We warned them that they could not cross the river,' the verb 'warn' is used like a verb of saying ; the Substantive clause represents a Declarative sentence in O.R.—you cannot cross the river. Observe, therefore, that a verb does not necessarily always take the same construction after it.

### EXERCISE LXXII.

#### A.

1. They persuaded their neighbors to adopt the same policy,<sup>1</sup> burn their towns and villages and set out along with them. (Ex. xxxv. Model.)
2. With many tears he embraced Caesar and began to implore him not to pass too severe a sentence<sup>2</sup> upon his brother.
3. When they did not obtain their request to be allowed to go home without giving hostages they asked him to grant them three days' time to consult their friends.
4. When Caesar sent messengers to demand that they give over their arms they said they had not promised to keep their men from attacking the village.
5. He commissions him to visit as many states as possible and return to him as quickly as possible.

---

<sup>1</sup> Adopt a policy = *consilium inire*.

<sup>2</sup> Not to decree anything too severe concerning.

#### B.

1. We warned them not to cross the river.  
We warned them that they could not cross the river.
2. We were persuaded to come here.  
We were persuaded that he would not come.

3. He was warned not to trust the Gauls nor (neu) to be seen near their camp.  
He was warned that it was dangerous to approach too near the horses.
4. He determined to finish the work at once.  
He determined that the man should be put to death.  
He determined that it was best for all the ships to be drawn up on shore.  
He determined that he ought not to hesitate longer.

### EXERCISE LXXIII.

1. He persuades him not to go. He has persuaded him not to go.  
He will persuade him not to go. He persuaded him not to go.
2. They ask to be allowed to journey through our province.
3. They begged him not to move his camp nearer them.
4. They will send messengers to entreat him not to advance further.
5. He obtained his request to be spared.
6. We will take pains to ascertain all the enemy's plans.
7. He forbade the soldiers to go outside the fortifications.
8. He was warned not to land from the ship.
9. We should make it our aim to help our friends.
10. Caesar demanded the surrender of their arms.

### EXERCISE LXXIV.

1. We should have no fear about his coming.
2. We did not fear that the enemy would conquer.
3. They said they were afraid their brother would never return home.
4. It is possible that he was absent.
5. So far was he from obtaining his request that he was ordered to leave the country immediately.
6. Is it possible that an honest man has been accused of theft?
7. It was quite impossible for us to be mistaken.
8. He succeeded in having the man acquitted of the charge of treason.
9. The result of this was that they could not so easily begin war on their neighbors.
10. Caesar determined that Dumnorix should not be allowed to take the cavalry with him.

### EXERCISE LXXV.

#### PERIODIC.

Being defeated in a slight battle Hamilcar asked the Roman consul to make a short truce that he might bury the dead. The consul rudely

replied that he ought to mind the living rather than the dead. Some time later the Romans were obliged to make a similar request which Hamilcar granted at once, saying that he warred not with the dead but with the living.

### EXERCISE LXXVI.

After their victory the Greeks determined to sail to the Hellespont and destroy the bridge that Xerxes and his army might not escape into Asia. Themistocles, however, dissuaded them from this, saying that the king, being intercepted, would return to Greece and renew the battle; and that despair sometimes achieves what courage cannot. At the same time he sent a messenger to the king to inform him that if he did not escape quickly the bridge would be demolished. Xerxes therefore fled, and thus Themistocles preserved the victory to the Athenians.

### EXERCISE LXXVII.

The Athenians, on their return to Attica after the defeat of the Persians, found their city ruined and their country desolate. Soon they began to rebuild their city and fortify it with a wall. This thing the Lacedaemonians took amiss and in order to prevent the completion of these fortifications sent envoys to Athens to persuade the Athenians not to build the walls. Themistocles, however, deceived them by the following stratagem: He along with two others was sent as an ambassador to Sparta. Thither he set off at once, but his colleagues at his suggestion lingered by the way as long as possible. In the meantime the Athenians, men, women and children, were building the walls by night and day, and when the Spartans complained about the matter Themistocles said that their statements were not true and urged them to send messengers of their own to Athens in order to learn the truth. At the same time he instructed the Athenians to detain them as hostages, by whatever means they could, until they had built their walls and recovered him. The Athenians did as he advised them. The walls were finished and Themistocles returned home in triumph.

### EXERCISE LXXVIII.

While en route to the Great Lake the scouts met a band of hunters among whom was the famous T. B. He was told that he was the man of all men whom they had been looking for, upon which he advised them to camp right where they were and he would tell them all he knew about the country around the Great Lake. Camp was accordingly made and on learning that their destination was the valley beyond the mountains he advised them to turn back at once as they still were distant from it more than five hundred miles.

---

## LESSON XXXVI.

COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS: *QUIN* AND *QUOMINUS*.

## 165. Commands.

The Imperative in the Present tense is used in commands and entreaties. The Future imperative is used where the time is distinctly future and especially in laws, wills, treaties, etc., which refer to the future.

But to meet the claims of politeness, courtesy or friendship where the imperative might sound harsh, the following periphrases are used; thus, instead of *scribe*, write

*scribas vēlim*—I would have you write, I should like you to write.

*tu, quaeso, ad me scribe*—do you, I entreat, write to me.

*scribe sis*—write, please. *sis = si vis*, if you please.

*fac* or *curā ut ad me scribas*—be sure to write me; or in the case of the plural—*vos, oro et obsecro, ad me scribite*.

Such forms naturally occur very frequently in epistolary writing.

## 166. Prohibitions.

'*ne*' with the Imperative to express a Prohibition is not used in the best classical prose. Its use is strictly poetical.

The following forms are used:

(a) '*ne*' with Pres. or Perf. Subj. See 135 (3).

(b) Far more commonly and as deferential, dignified forms.

*nōlī, nōlīte* with the Infin.

*cavē, cavēte ne* with the Pres. or Perf. Subj.

*noli hoc facere.*

*cave ne hoc facias.*

} do not do this.

The distinction between the use of the Pres. and Perf. Subj. after '*cavē nē*' is the same as in 135 (3).

167. *quin*.

*quīn* = *qui* (old form of Abl. *quō*), *ne* (*non*) = *whereby not, that by it not*, or in some cases, *qui* (*quae, quod*) *non*.

(1) **quin** may denote Negative Result = **ut non**.

*nihil est tam difficile quin investigari possit.* Nothing is so difficult that it cannot be discovered.

*facere non possum quin literas mittam.* I cannot help sending a letter.

*fieri non potest quin Balbo adiuvet.* I cannot help aiding Balbus.

(2) **quin** may introduce a Clause of Characteristic.

= **qui (quae, quod) non**.

*nēmō est quin crēdat.* There is no one but believes.

(3) **quin** may introduce a Substantive Clause.

(a) With verbs and phrases of doubting and omitting.

*non est dubium quin hoc facere possint.*

*quis dubitat quin hoc verum sit?*

*non erat dubium quin venturus esset.*

*nec multum abfuit quin omnes interficeremur.*

And we were very near being all killed.

## (4) (b) With verbs of preventing, hindering, opposing.

*retinēri non poterant quin tela conicerent.*

They could not be restrained from hurling their javelins.

This kind of clause is akin to a final clause.

*quin* requires that the Principal Verb or Phrase must be Negative or Virtual Negative.

168. Words and Phrases followed by **quin**.

*nemo est quin; non dubito quin; non est dubium, or, dubitandum quin; quis dubitat quin?*

*fieri non potest quin*—it cannot be but that.

*temperare mihi non possum quin*—I cannot refrain from.

*minimum abesse* } used impersonally { to be very near.  
*haud multum abesse* } to be within a very little.

*nihil praetermittere quin*—to leave nothing undone to.

*facere non possum quin*—I cannot help; I cannot but.

*quid causae est quin*—what reason is there against.

NOTE.—*dubito* may also take the Infin.

*hoc facere non dubitat*—he does not hesitate to do this.

## 169.

## quominus.

quōminus = quo minus = ut eo minus—*by which the less; that by it the less.*

Is used with verbs and phrases of Preventing, Hindering, Opposing, in Substantive clauses akin to final clauses.

naves vento tenebantur quominus in portum pervenirent. The ships were prevented by the wind from reaching the harbor.

per te stetit quominus ad urbem redirem. You were the cause of my not returning to the city.

quid obstat quominus hoc faciamus. What prevents us from doing this.

The verb or phrase is generally negative or virtual negative.

The following verbs may take *quominus* :

dēterreo, obsto, impedio, and some others.

recuso quominus = I protest against; I object to.

## EXERCISE LXXIX.

1. It cannot be denied that it is more disgraceful to deceive than to be deceived.
2. She never saw him without calling him fratricide.<sup>1</sup>
3. He could scarcely be prevented from going on board<sup>2</sup> the ship.
4. Who doubts that virtue and vice<sup>3</sup> are contrary to each other.
5. It cannot be denied that it is disgraceful to tell a falsehood.
6. I shall leave nothing undone to finish the work.
7. I cannot help complaining of the cowardice of the sailors.
8. There is no one but believes that he was foully<sup>4</sup> murdered.
9. They were very near being all taken prisoners.
10. I cannot refrain from thinking that he consulted his own interests only.

---

<sup>1</sup>fratricida, ae. <sup>2</sup>conscendere in with Acc. <sup>3</sup>turpitudō, inis. <sup>4</sup>nefarie.

## EXERCISE LXXX.

1. You were the cause of our not winning the day.
2. Nothing prevents you from doing this.
3. It was owing to you that he did not become a candidate for<sup>1</sup> the consulship.
4. No one is so iron-hearted<sup>2</sup> as not to love his own children.
5. The ships were within a very little of being all built.
6. It cannot be doubted that the world was made by design<sup>3</sup> and not by chance.<sup>4</sup>
7. I cannot help accusing him of theft.



8. Who doubts that it is better for us to die free than to live slaves?  
 9. We shall leave nothing undone to effect his release.<sup>5</sup>  
 10. There is no doubt that he intends to violate the laws.

<sup>1</sup>petere. <sup>2</sup>ferreus. <sup>3</sup>consilium. <sup>4</sup>casus, us. <sup>5</sup>to release = to free.

## EXERCISE LXXXI.

## A.

Anger, invective does not stop to be polite.

Refer<sup>1</sup> the matter to the senate, you say: for that is your demand,<sup>2</sup> and, if this order decrees<sup>3</sup> that its wish<sup>2</sup> is that you go into exile, you say you will bow<sup>4</sup> to their decision.<sup>2</sup> I will not refer it; that is contrary<sup>5</sup> to my principles;<sup>6</sup> and yet I will enable<sup>7</sup> you to understand what these gentlemen think of you. Go out of the city, Catiline; free the republic from fear; go off into exile, if this (is the) word you are waiting for. Why not,<sup>8</sup> Catiline? Are you not listening? Do you not observe the silence of these men? They tolerate<sup>9</sup> (this); they are silent.

## B.

Since this is the case,<sup>10</sup> Catiline, proceed<sup>11</sup> whither you started.<sup>12</sup> Go out of the city sometime:<sup>13</sup> the gates are open:<sup>14</sup> depart. All<sup>15</sup> too long that Manlian camp has been wanting<sup>16</sup> you its general. Take out with you also all your (friends); if not<sup>17</sup> (all), as many as possible; cleanse<sup>18</sup> the city. You will free me from great fear, provided only<sup>19</sup> a wall is between<sup>20</sup> you and me. You can no longer mingle<sup>21</sup> among us; I will not bear (it), I will not suffer (it), I will not allow (it).

<sup>1</sup>refero. <sup>2</sup>see 36. <sup>3</sup>Tense? <sup>4</sup>obtemperare. <sup>5</sup>abhorreo ab. <sup>6</sup>customs.  
<sup>7</sup>facere ut. <sup>8</sup>quid est? <sup>9</sup>endure. <sup>10</sup>see 179. <sup>11</sup>pergo. <sup>12</sup>began. <sup>13</sup>aliquando  
<sup>14</sup>pateo. <sup>15</sup>nimum. <sup>16</sup>desidero. <sup>17</sup>see 204 (b). <sup>18</sup>purgare. <sup>19</sup>see 205.  
<sup>20</sup>intersum inter. <sup>21</sup>versari.

## LESSON XXXVII.

## 170.

## INTERROGATIVES.

Single questions may be introduced by one of the three particles, *nē*, *num*, *nonne*, or by an Interrogative Pronoun, Adjective, or Adverb.

## QUESTION.

## ANSWER EXPECTED.

putasne? Do you think so?

puto, or non puto.

nonne putas? Don't you think so?

puto.

num putas? { Do you think so?

{ You don't think so, do you? } non puto.

*ne* simply asks for information. It is an enclitic, and is appended to the most emphatic word.

*nonne* expects the answer 'yes.'

*num* expects the answer 'no.'

The answer is generally in the shape of a repetition of the verb.

'Yes' may also be *etiam*, *ita vero*, *sane* (certainly);

'No,' *minime*; *nequaquam*, by no means; *non*; used alone or combined with other words, as *minime ego quidem*.

## 171. Interrogative Pronouns, Adjectives and Adverbs.

who, what—*quis*, *quisnam*? *quid*, *quidnam*? (Pronoun.)

which, what—*qui*, *quod*? (Adj.)

which of the two—*uter*? which one of a series—*quotus*?

how great—*quantus*? how many—*quot*?

of what kind—*quālis*?

where—*ubi*? whence—*unde*? whither—*quō*?

why—*cur*, *quāre*, *quamobrem*? (wherefore).

when—*quando*? (*cum* is never interrogative).

how, in what way—*quōmōdo*, *quemadmodum*? *quī*, as in, *qui fit ut*?

how—(with Adjs. or Advs.) *quam*?

how often—*quoties*? how long—*quamdiu*?

how far—*quousque*? how greatly—*quantopere*?

*quae tandem causa*?—what cause, pray?

## 172. DOUBLE QUESTIONS.

*utrum ibis an manebis*?

Will you go or stay?

*servine estis an liberi*?

Are you slaves or freemen?

Double questions are introduced by

whether ..... or; ..... or not.

*utrum* ..... *an*; ..... *annon*.

By an ellipsis '*an*' sometimes stands alone.

It is generally attached to the more probable of the two questions.

## 173. INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

Indirect Questions (Dependent Interrogatives) are Substantive Clauses.

The introducing verb is generally one of asking or telling, but many other verbs and phrases admit of an indirect question after them.

An **Indirect Question** is always put in the **Subjunctive**.

It may be introduced by

(a) An Interr. Pron., Adj., Adv. or Conj (*quare*).

Who did this?—Direct Question—**quis hoc fecit?**

I do not know who did this.—Indirect Question—**nescio quis hoc fecerit.**

I asked him when he was going to return. **quando esset rediturus quaesivi.**

He told me how many there were. **dixit mihi quot essent.**

(b) *num* or *ne*: without distinction of meaning=*if* or *whether*.

Occasionally after *quaero* by *nonne*=whether not.

Epaminondas asked whether his shield was safe.

Epaminondas **quaesivit** { **salvusne esset clipeus.**  
**num salvus esset clipeus.**

NOTE.—**quaesivi quid facerem**=I asked what I was to do, represents a Deliberative Subjunctive **quid facerem?**=What was I to do? or, **quid faciam?**=What am I to do? as an Indirect Question.

## 174. INDIRECT DOUBLE QUESTIONS.

**utrum servi essent an liberi quaesivi.** I asked whether they were slaves or free.

Indirect Double Questions are introduced by

<b>utrum . . . an</b>	}	<b>Or not, or no = necne.</b>
<b>—ne . . . an</b>		
<b>— an</b>		
<b>— ne</b>		

<b>haud scio an.</b>	{	<b>absit</b> —I am inclined to think Probably Perhaps	}	<b>he is absent.</b>
<b>nescio an.</b>				

There is an ellipsis of the first clause.

**forsitan (fors sit an) absit.** Perhaps, it may be that, he is absent.

## 175. Distinguish the following:

(a) I do not know who did it—**nescio quis hoc fecerit.**

*Indirect Question.*

I know the man who did it—**novi hominem qui hoc fecit.**

*Relative Clause.*

A Rel. Pron. has an antecedent expressed or understood.

A Dep. Interr. has no antecedent expressed or understood.

(b) **forsitan absit.**—perhaps he is absent.

**forte abest.**—he happens to be absent ; he is accidentally absent.

**fortasse abest.**—perhaps, probably, very likely, he is absent.

(c) *If, whether, or, in their different senses.*

1. If you did this you make a **si hoc fēcisti, errāvisti.**  
mistake. *If, si. Conditional.*

2. I ask if you did this? **num hoc fēceris, quaero?**  
*If, whether,—num. Indirect Question.*

3. Whether did you do this **utrum hoc fēcisti, annon?**  
or not? *Direct Double Question.*

4. I asked whether you did it **utrum hoc fēceris, necne, quae-**  
or not. **sivi.**  
*Indirect Double Question.*

5. Whether you did it or not **seu fēcisti, seu non fēcisti, poe-**  
you shall be punished. **nam dabis.**  
Whether . . . or ; **seu . . . seu ; sive . . . sive.**  
*Double or Alternative Condition.*

6. You either did it or you **aut hoc fecisti aut abfuisti.**  
were absent.  
You may do either the one **vel hoc vel illud tibi facere licet.**  
or the other.  
Either . . . or ; **aut . . . aut ; vel . . . vel.**  
*Disjunctive Conjunctions.*

**aut** marks a sharp distinction ; **vel** (connected with **velle**) treats the difference as unimportant.

## EXERCISE LXXXII.

### A.

1. Will the man be condemned or acquitted? It is of great importance to me whether the man be condemned or acquitted.
2. Should a good citizen obey bad laws or not? He asked whether a good citizen should obey bad laws or not.
3. Whether the enemy have been defeated or have retreated is uncertain.<sup>1</sup>
4. It is incredible<sup>2</sup> how often you have been warned not to put confidence in such an untruthful man<sup>3</sup> as Caius.
5. Whether death is an everlasting<sup>4</sup> sleep or the beginning of another<sup>5</sup> life is difficult to tell.

6. Be sure and let me know when you intend to return.
7. Who of us, think you, does not know what you did last night, and what, the previous night, where you were, whom you called together, what plan you formed.
8. I asked him whether he needed<sup>6</sup> money or men.
9. Whether he was ashamed and sorry for his deed or rejoiced and gloried<sup>7</sup> in it I know not.
10. Whether you ought to go or remain at home I cannot tell you.

## B.

1. Whether you go or stay makes a great difference to me.
2. Whether you go or stay, the work must be done.
3. If you did this you must suffer the punishment.
4. Did you do this, is the question for us to decide.
5. He was either killed or taken prisoner in that battle.
6. You may do it either by force or secretly.<sup>8</sup>
7. I am at a loss<sup>9</sup> what to do, when to return. (173, note.)
8. He did not know whither to turn. (173, note.)
9. I do not know what he is doing, why he is returning.

---

<sup>1</sup>incertus. <sup>2</sup>incredibilis. <sup>3</sup>mendax. <sup>4</sup>sempiternus. <sup>5</sup>alter. Why not alius? <sup>6</sup>There was need to him. <sup>7</sup>glorior, 1, with Abl. or de. <sup>8</sup>clam. <sup>9</sup>dubitare.

## EXERCISE LXXXIII.

Review 36. Eliminate the abstract nouns and adapt to Dep. Interr. construction.

1. He ascertained the number of the enemy.
2. Can you tell us the date of your departure?
3. We all saw the nature and extent of the danger.
4. We told them our destination. (175 a.)
5. You see the kind of man he is, his manner of life in his old age.
6. I asked him his opinion about the matter.
7. He wishes to know the number and size of the harbors.
8. No one can foretell the probable duration of the war.
9. We asked the date of their departure from home and the reason for their return.
10. He knows not who were his father's murderers.
11. He would not tell us his age.
12. We told him what his duty was in regard to the exiles.
13. We shall never know the manner of his death.
14. I will utter my real sentiments. (175 a.)
15. I will tell you my real opinion. (175 a.)

## EXERCISE LXXXIV.

1. Their future route was now a matter of serious perplexity.
2. He pretended much friendship towards them and said that he had come from the king to inquire the reason of their expedition.
3. He pointed out the ease with which the Spartans might march into the Persian empire and obtain possession of the city.
4. Since these matters have all been revealed by me in the Senate, I will now briefly unfold them to you, fellow-citizens, in order that you may know both their extent and the manner of their discovery.
5. And when I saw that they were still with us and had remained at Rome, I spent all my days and nights upon this object<sup>1</sup> that I might feel and see what they were doing, what they were plotting.
6. While the elephants are being taken across the river, Hannibal had in the meantime sent five hundred Numidian horse to the Roman camp to discover<sup>2</sup> the position and number of their forces and their probable intentions.<sup>3</sup>
7. The Gauls force travellers,<sup>4</sup> even against their will,<sup>5</sup> to declare from what district they have come and what they have learned about each important<sup>6</sup> matter.
8. Citizens can hardly be persuaded to elect to office those who in the past have served their own interest rather than that of the state, and I am inclined to believe that this is not to be wondered at very<sup>7</sup> much.

---

<sup>1</sup> in eo. <sup>2</sup> speculari. <sup>3</sup> quid paro. <sup>4</sup> viator. <sup>5</sup> = Unwilling, *invitus*. <sup>6</sup> *gravis*.  
<sup>7</sup> So much, *adeo*.

## EXERCISE LXXXV.

## RAPID QUESTION AND ANSWER.

I do not ask of you why Sex. Roscius killed his father: I ask you how he killed him. Did he cut off his head<sup>1</sup> himself or did he give him to others to be slain?<sup>2</sup> If you charge<sup>3</sup> (that he did it) himself, (my answer is) he was not at Rome; if you say that he did it through others, I ask (through) slaves or freemen. If through freemen, what men? (Was it) a native<sup>4</sup> of Ameria or these assassins<sup>5</sup> from the city? If from Ameria, who are these? Why are they not named? If from Rome, how did Roscius, who has not been at Rome for many years, and never was there more than three days, get acquainted<sup>6</sup> with them? Where did he meet<sup>7</sup> them? With whom did he talk? How did he get them to do<sup>8</sup> it? 'He gave them a bribe.'<sup>9</sup> To whom did he give it? Through whom did he give it? How much did he give?

---

<sup>1</sup> *percutio*. <sup>2</sup> See 74. <sup>3</sup> *arguo*. <sup>4</sup> *Amerinus*. <sup>5</sup> *sicarius*. <sup>6</sup> *novi*. <sup>7</sup> *convenire* with Acc. <sup>8</sup> Get to do it = persuade. <sup>9</sup> *pretium*.



## LESSON XXXVIII.

176.

## CAUSAL CLAUSES.

Causal clauses are introduced by

**quod, quia** = because ; **quoniam (quandoquidem)** = since ;

**cum** = because, whereas, seeing that, inasmuch as.

**qui, Rel. Pron.**

177.

**quod, quia, quoniam.**

Causal clauses with *quod, quia, quoniam*, take the *Indic.* when they state the reason as that of the writer or the speaker ;

They take the *Subj.* when they state the reason as that of another.

The clause is then in *Virtual Oratio Obliqua*.

**Socrates accusatus est, quod cor-  
rumperet iuventutem.**

Socrates was accused because (as  
his accusers said) he corrupted  
the young men.

**Caesar questus est quod sine  
causā bellum intulissent.**

Caesar complained that they had  
made war without a cause.

This *Virtual O. O.* is quite common after such verbs as complaining, accusing, blaming, praising, etc. By its use the writer or speaker shifts the responsibility for the statement from himself to the subject of the main verb.

178.

**non quod, non quo.**

*non quod, non quō* = not because ; *non quān* = not but what, with the *Subj.*, often introduce merely a *Conceptive Reason*, followed by *sed quo, sed quod* = but because, with *Indic.* introducing the real reason.

179.

**cum.**

*Cum* with the *Subj.* is often *Causal*.

The cause is thus stated not as an actual fact, but as one conceived in the mind.

**quae cum ita sint.**

Since this is the case.

180.

**qui.**

*Qui* often introduces a Causal clause = inasmuch as he.

**tum Titurius, qui nihil ante  
providisset, concursare.**

Then Titurius, inasmuch as he had  
foreseen nothing, began to bustle  
about.

## 181. Causal Relative and V.O.O.

Inasmuch as the Causal Subj. or V.O.O. and Causal Relative must be thoroughly understood in order to translate accurately, the student is advised to translate the following sentences and note the cases of these :

**Dumnorix** omnibus primo precibus petere contendit ut in Galliā relinqueretur, partim, quod insuētus navigandi mare timeret, partim quod religionibus impediri sese diceret (he was, as he said, afraid).

NOTE.—**diceret** is attracted into Subj. from **timeret**; **impediretur** would have been the form expected. This use of **diceret**, however, is quite common.

eum interfici **Caesar** iubet, nihil hunc, se absente, pro sano facturum arbitratus, quī (inasmuch as he) praesentis imperium neglexisset.

at **Cotta**, qui cogitasset, haec posse in itinere accidere, nullā in re communi saluti deerat.

veritus ut hostium impetum sustinere posset, praesertim quos recenti victoria efferri sciret, litteras **Caesari** remittit (especially since he knew they were elated).

omnibus precibus detestatus **Ambiorigem**, qui eius consilii auctor fuisset (cursing A. with all manner of imprecations because he had been the author of the conspiracy).

**Caesar** unum, quod cohortes ex statione essent emissae, questus, etc. tum **Caesar**, qui haec omnia explorata haberet, redire statuit.

O fortunate adolescens, qui tuae virtutis **Homerum** praeconem invēneris (in that you found a **Homer** to herald your valor).

## 182. CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

(a) Though it is a fine day, yet I will not go.

(b) Even though it be a fine day, } I will not go.  
However fine a day it may be, }

In (a) the concessive clause makes a statement as a *fact*.

In (b) the concessive clause makes a statement merely hypothetical as a *conception of the mind*.

Concessive clauses take the **Indic.** when they state a **fact**; the **Subj.** when they state a mere **conception of the mind**.

## 183. quanquam, etsi and tametsi

merely contrast two facts and are followed by the *Indic*.

**184.                   quamvis, licet, ut.**

*quamvis* (however much you wish), *licet* (it is allowed), *ut* (supposing that) = although, introduce merely hypothetical clauses and are followed by the *Subj.*

**185.                   cum, qui.**

*cum* = although, introducing a concessive clause, is followed by *Subj.*

*qui*, rel. pron., sometimes introduces a concessive clause with the *subj.* = although he.

*id tulit factum graviter Indutiomarus suam gratiam inter suos minui et qui (although he) iam ante inimico in nos animo fuisset multo gravius hoc dolore exarsit.*

**186.**

*quanquam* sometimes = *and yet*, and introduces a principal clause.

*quanquam quid loquor.*           And yet why do I speak?

*etsi* sometimes = *even if*, and introduces a *conditional* clause. It then follows the rules for conditional clauses.

## CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

**187.**

In all clauses of Comparison the general rule determining the use of the Indicative and Subjunctive holds and is a sufficient guide.

The following sentences illustrate the different types. They are mostly idiomatic and should be carefully noted.

**188.                   With the Indicative.**

As we have shown above.           *ut supra demonstravimus.*

He has narrated everything,   *omnia, sicut acta sunt, memoravit.*  
just as it was done.

Contrary to my expectation, he   *contra quam exspectavi, rediit.*  
returned.

*ut, sicut, quemadmodum, quam, ac*, and Correlatives (129, 131, 132) go appropriately with the Indicative.

**189.**

In many cases the thought both in English and Latin can be expressed by different idioms.

He was punished as he deserved. *perinde ac meritis est, poenas persolvit.*

He paid the penalty which he merited. *poenas, quas debuit, persolvit.*

He was punished deservedly, or, according to his deserts. *merito, or pro meritis, poenas persolvit.*

### 190. With the Subjunctive.

He was punished just as if he deserved it. *perinde ac si meritis esset, poenas persolvit.*

A panic ensued just as if the enemy were already at the gates. *trepidatum est quasi hostes iam ad portas adessent.*

Compare Conditional Clauses 203.

*Quasi, tanquam, tanquam si, velut, velut si, ut si, = just as if,* go appropriately with the Subjunctive.

### EXERCISE LXXXVI.

1. Flaminius conducted the campaign with more boldness than caution (36).
2. A few, but (*ac*) almost all the best men agreed with Hanno, but, as generally happens, quantity outvoted quality (the greater part outvoted<sup>1</sup> the better).
3. A chief's influence is in proportion to the number of his fighting men.
4. May the gods so sacrifice<sup>2</sup> me, as I shall (fut. pf.) sacrifice this lamb.
5. All the best men are influenced<sup>3</sup> by love of glory.
6. Regulus pushed aside<sup>4</sup> his friends, who were delaying his return to Carthage, just as if he were setting out to the country.
7. We descend into Italy, ready to fight more boldly and more bravely than the enemy, in proportion as our hope is greater, and enthusiasm (*animus*) is greater in those who attack than in those who defend.

---

<sup>1</sup>vinco. <sup>2</sup>mactare. <sup>3</sup>duco. <sup>4</sup>dimoveo.

### EXERCISE LXXXVII.

Remember 36 for all abstract nouns.

1. His acts corresponded with his words.
2. His life was in accordance with his professions.<sup>1</sup>
3. The matter turned out as I expected.
4. They fought in the same order in which they had been drawn up.

5. I have acted in accordance with my duty.
6. We are not praised in proportion to our deserts.<sup>2</sup>
7. You have acted in violation of your promises.
8. Your actions are inconsistent with your words.
9. He inflicted on the traitors the punishment they deserved.
10. From the day Hannibal was declared leader he determined to make war upon us, just as if Italy had been decreed to him as his province.
11. For as among the Greeks, so in our state, all the noblest and most illustrious men attained to the highest offices and the greatest glory by eloquence.
12. While I am in agreement with those who maintain that war ought to be declared, I entirely dissent from those who prefer war to peace on<sup>3</sup> honorable terms.

---

<sup>1</sup>*profiteor*, <sup>2</sup>*fessus*.    <sup>2</sup>*mereor*.    <sup>3</sup>=with.

---

## LESSON XXXIX.

### 191. TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) <i>dum ea geruntur, Caesar ad castra rēvertitur.</i>                               | While those actions are going on, Caesar returns to the camp.  |
| (b) <i>posteaquam equitatus noster in conspectum vēnit, hostes terga verterunt.</i>    | After our cavalry came in sight the enemy fled.  |
| (c) <i>dum reliquae naves eo convenirent, in ancoris exspectavit.</i>                  | He waited under anchor until the rest of the ships could assemble.                                     |
| (d) <i>priusquam se hostes ex fuga reciperent, in fines Suesionum exercitum duxit.</i> | Before the enemy could recover from their flight, he led his army into the territory of the Suesiones. |

In (a) and (b) the temporal clauses convey the idea of *Time* and *Time only*. They deal with actual occurrences.

In (c) and (d) besides the idea of time there are involved the ideas of *purpose*, *aim*, *cause*.

In Temporal Clauses **Pure Time** is always expressed by the **Indic.**;

**Time with** the accessory notion of **Cause** or **Purpose** or **Intention** by the **Subj.**

## 192.

**postquam, posteaquam** = after ; **ut, ubi** = when ; **simul, simul ac**  
**(simul atque) cum primum** = as soon as,

regularly take the *Indic.* ; *Pf. tense*.

NOTE.—For the *Pf.* the Historic *Pres.* is sometimes used ; and the *Plupf.* when the time is definitely stated in days, etc. ; and the *Impf.* when a continued state is expressed.

## 193.

**dum** = while,

regularly takes the *Indic.* in the *Pres. tense* (*Hist. Pres.*) to denote present or past time.

## 194.

**dum, donec, quoad** = as long as.

take the *Indic.*

## 195.

**dum, donec, quoad** = until.

take the *Indic.* to state a fact, to indicate pure time ;

the *Subj.* to indicate expectancy, purpose or anticipation.

## 196.

**antequam, priusquam.**

**antequam (ante . . . quam), priusquam (prius . . . quam)** = before,

take the *Indic.* to state a fact, to indicate mere priority of time ;

the *Subj.* to indicate motive or anticipation.

## 197.

**CUM.**

**cum Caesar nuntios mīsisset, respondērunt.**

**cum esset Caesar in citeriore Galliā, crebri ad eum rumores adferebantur.**

'*cum*' is the commonest of all conjunctions and most frequently it is used of past time and circumstances and goes with the *Subj.*

"The reason is that while other conjunctions express the relation of time and time only, *cum* introduces the circumstances which led up to or accompanied the fact stated by the principal verb and these circumstances are looked upon as not merely preceding or accompanying but as affecting and accounting for the fact."

**198. nam, tum, cum ex urbe Catilinam eiciebam, eos infirmos sine illo fore putabam.**

For at the time when I was seeking to drive Catiline out of the city,  
 I thought that they would be weak without him.



*cum* Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factionis principes erant Aedui, alterius Sequani.

**cum**, referring to the **past**, takes—

the *Indic.* (Imperf., Hist. Pf., or Plupf.) to denote *pure time*,  
the *Subj.* (Impf. or Plupf.) to denote the *accompanying circumstances or situation*.

When pure time is indicated some such word as *tum, eo tempore*, is often put in the main clause.

**199. cum**, referring to the **present or future** regularly takes the *Indic.* denoting mere identity or *pure time*.

**cum** tacent, clamant.

{ When they are silent, they shout.  
{ Their silence means exclamation.

**cum** vidēbis, tum sciēs.

When you see (shall see), then you will know.

**cum** rediero, litteras mittam. When I return, I will send a letter.

NOTE.—*cum* denoting a repeated act in the past. See 212.

### EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

The consul had come to the camp of the enemy in order of battle<sup>1</sup> about three days after Hannibal moved from the bank of the Rhone.

After Caesar came into the territory of the Veneti he determined to cross the Rhine for two reasons.

And now they were not more than two days' march distant from him when<sup>2</sup> they learn that by despatch of Caesar two legions have arrived on the scene.<sup>3</sup>

The consuls waited a few days for the allies to assemble.

These were cut down, their boats seized, and before that part of the Menapii, which was (remaining) this side of the Rhine peacefully<sup>4</sup> in their homes,<sup>5</sup> could be informed of it the Germans crossed the river.

Accordingly on the following night the soldiers were ordered to gather their baggage<sup>6</sup> together in silence; the camp was moved from the Ticinus and a swift march made<sup>7</sup> to the Po in order to get the forces across before the bridge<sup>8</sup> of boats was destroyed. They reached Placentia before Hannibal could know for certain<sup>9</sup> that they had left the Ticinus.

But (**at**) the enemy, as soon as they got sight of our cavalry, whose number amounted to<sup>10</sup> five thousand, whereas<sup>11</sup> they themselves had not more than eight hundred horse, because those who had gone across the Meuse<sup>12</sup> had not yet returned, made a sudden charge upon our men who had no fear (of any such action), because their ambassadors had gone away from Caesar only a little while before, and quickly threw them into disorder; when our men continued to offer resistance, they,

according to their custom, jumped off their horses,<sup>13</sup> and after unhorsing<sup>14</sup> a considerable number of our men they put the rest to flight and drove<sup>15</sup> them off so panic-stricken that they did not cease to flee<sup>16</sup> until they came into sight of our army.<sup>17</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>**quadrato agmine.** <sup>2</sup>**cum** with Indic. This type of expression though quite common in English must, as a rule, be avoided in Latin. <sup>3</sup>Omit 'on the scene.' <sup>4</sup>Use adj. **quietus.** <sup>5</sup>**sedes, is.** <sup>6</sup>**vasa, orum.** personal baggage. <sup>7</sup>**festinare** used impersonally. <sup>8</sup>Bridge of boats=pl. of **ratis, is.** <sup>9</sup>**satis.** <sup>10</sup>=was. <sup>11</sup>**cum.** <sup>12</sup>**Mosa.** <sup>13</sup>=leapt down to their feet. <sup>14</sup>**deicio.** <sup>15</sup>**ago.** <sup>16</sup>Cease from flight. <sup>17</sup>'army on the march.'

### EXERCISE LXXXIX.

The Indians had just packed up<sup>1</sup> and were preparing to make a move from the camp when<sup>2</sup> they saw the soldiers coming down upon them. A great many of them succeeded in jumping<sup>3</sup> upon their ponies, and leaving everything behind them advanced out of the village and prepared to meet<sup>4</sup> our charge; but when they saw the swiftness<sup>5</sup> of our advance they quickly concluded that it was useless<sup>6</sup> to try to check us, and those who were mounted, rapidly rode away, while the others on foot fled for safety to the neighboring hills.

---

<sup>1</sup>pack up=**vasa colligere.** <sup>2</sup>Which is the logically principal verb? <sup>3</sup>**equum conscendere.** <sup>4</sup>resist, sustain. <sup>5</sup>Literally, or adapt to D. I. <sup>6</sup>they would to no purpose (**nequicquam**) try.

### EXERCISE XC.

The next morning at daylight the march was resumed, but before they came out of the ravine<sup>1</sup> upon the level prairie a council was held as to the best course to pursue. It was deemed prudent to make a bee-line across the mountains, over which the trail would be very rugged and difficult but more secure. One of the party, a strong-headed,<sup>2</sup> impatient<sup>3</sup> Scotchman, swore he had rather face all the Indians in the country than attempt the tedious journey over the mountains. As the others did not agree with his opinion<sup>4</sup> they all began to climb the hills as fast as they could, in order to reach the top of the divide as soon as possible. The Scotchman, who was many years older than his companions, turned off from the party, and, though all attempted to impress him with the rashness of his conduct, he was deaf<sup>5</sup> to every remonstrance,<sup>5</sup> and went off alone across the plains.

---

<sup>1</sup>Translate ravine, level prairie, trail, divide, impress, conduct, by common words. Connect sentences properly. <sup>2</sup>**durus.** <sup>3</sup>**vehemens.** These adjectives do not qualify **Scotus** in Latin; translate 'the learned Cato.' They may be put in the Superlative; Latin 'lays the colors on a little thicker than English.' <sup>4</sup>Simply=(him). <sup>5</sup>Translate the simple meaning.

---

## LESSON XL.

### 200. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.

If he said this, he made a mistake.

A conditional sentence consists of two parts:

The if-clause, containing the condition, called the *Protasis*.

The principal clause, containing the result or conclusion, called the *Apodosis*.

The *Protasis*, the subordinate clause, may be logically the controlling clause, but it is the Principal clause that grammatically determines the general character of the whole sentence.

The student must grasp the meaning of the conditional sentence in its entirety.

Conditional Sentences are of Three Types.

#### 201.

##### I.

If you say this, you are wrong... *si hoc dicis, erras.*

If you said this, you were wrong... *si hoc dixisti, errasti.*

If you shall say this, you will be wrong... *si hoc dices, errabis.*

If you do  
shall have done } this, you will be punished { *si hoc feceris,*  
 *poenas dabis.*

If you have anything, give it... *si quid habes (habebis), dā.*

If we have anything, let us give it... *si hoc habemus (habebimus), dēmus.*

##### I. In dealing with Facts:

Use the **Indic.** in Any Tense, in both clauses.

The Imperative or an Independent Subj. may take the place of the indicative in the *apodosis*.

#### 202.

##### II.

If you were to say this, you would be wrong... *si hoc dicas, erres.*

If he should have anything, he would give it... *si quid habeat, det.*

##### II. Conceptions of the Mind... Future Time:

Use the **Present Subj.** in Both Clauses.

(Sometimes the Perf. Subj. is used... *si hoc dixeris, erraveris.*)

## 203.

## III.

- (a) If you were saying this (now), **si hoc diceres, errares.**  
       you would be wrong.  
       If he had anything he would **si quid haberet, daret**  
       give it.
- (b) If you had said this, you **si hoc dixisses, erravisses.**  
       would have been wrong.  
       If he had had anything, he **si quid habuisset, dedisset.**  
       would have given it.
- (c) If we had fought more bravely, **si fortius pugnavissemus, liberi**  
       we would now be free. **essemus.**

## III. Condition Unfulfilled, Result Unrealized.

Use the **Impf. Subj.** for Present Time and Continued Action.

Use the **Plupf. Subj.** for Past Time and Completed Action  
 in Either Clause.

## 204. The same rules apply with

**nisi**=unless; **si non, si minus**=if not; **sin**=but if;  
**sive ... sive**; **seu ... seu**=whether ... or.

- (1) **legati essent victi, nisi Caesar subvenisset.**  
**redire nolebat nisi victor**—unless victorious.  
       **nisi rogatus**—without being invited.  
**iussit milites non longius progredi, nisi castris munitis** (Abl. Abs.)
- (2) **si hoc feceris, gaudebo, si non feceris** } **aequo animo feram.**  
       **si minus** }
- cum spē, si non optimā, at** To live with some hope, if not  
       **aliquā tamen vivere.** the highest.
- (3) **hunc mihi timorem eripe, si verus est, ne opprimar, sin falsus,**  
       **ut timere desinam.**
- (4) **sive manet, sive venit, bene** Whether he stays or comes, it is  
       **est.** well.
- (a) '**nisi**' negatives a whole clause, or word representing the  
       *protasis*.  
       '**si non**' negatives a single word. It is frequently followed by  
       **at, tamen, certe, at tamen, at certe.**

(b) Use '*si minus*,' not '*si non*' for 'if not' when the verb is not repeated.

(c) *si*, *nisi*, *si non*, *si minus*, may be used with single words or phrases.

(d) *nisi forte*=unless perchance. *nisi vero*=unless indeed.  
*quod si*=but if, now if.

## 205. *dum, modo, dummodo.*

provided, if only, on condition that.

*oderint dum metuant.* Let them hate, provided (if only) they fear.

*manent ingenia modo perma-* Mental powers remain if only in-  
*neat industria.* dustry remains.

The Subjunctive is invariably used.

The idea involved is that of 'Wish' or 'Proviso.'

They are negated by the addition of *ne*.

## 206. IDIOMS.

(a) *si quem cessare viderat. . . . castigabat.*

If ever he saw that anyone was hanging back, he corrected, or would correct, him. Cp. 212.

(Livy and subsequent writers use the Subj.)

(b) He will come if he *can*—*veniet si poterit.*

if he wishes—*veniet si volet.* Observe 'precision.'

(c) *hoc facere potuisti* } *si voluisses* { you could { have done this, if  
*hoc tibi facere licuit* } { you might { you had wished.

*hoc facere debuisti* }  
*hoc te facere oportuit* } *si licuisset* { You ought to, should, have  
*hoc tibi faciendum fuit* } { done this, had you been  
allowed.

*hoc facturus fuisti,* You would have done this } if you had been  
*si licuisset.* You were likely to do this } allowed.

*quid, si hostes ad urbem veniant, facturi estis.*

If the enemy should come to the city, what would you, what do you intend to, do?

*si quis haec loquatur, vix puto eum impetraturum esse.*

If any one were to speak thus, I scarcely think he would obtain his request.

These examples do not involve a violation of the general rule.

A different mode of expression to represent a different thought takes the place of the regular 'mood.' The *possibility, duty, or intention* is not 'conditioned,' nor represented as 'unrealized' or 'contrary to fact.'

(d) *haec si tecum patria loquatur, nonne impetrare debeat?*

*quibus ego si me restitisse dicam, nimium mihi sumam, et non sim ferendus.*

*quodsi Catilina in urbe ad hanc diem remansisset . . . dimicandum nobis cum illo fuisset*—it would have been necessary for us to fight him.

*itaque, credo, si civis Romanus Archias legibus non esset . . . perficere non potuisset*—he would not have been able.

In these cases the idea expressed by the verb of possibility, duty, or necessity is itself 'conditioned,' and the regular rule is followed.

Compare 'you might have done this if you had wished' with 'you would have been able to do this if he had helped you.'

(e) Conditional Clauses subordinate to Consecutive Clauses, Indirect Questions, etc.

*milites tam fortiter pugnaverunt ut, nisi nox intervenisset, hostes terga versuri fuerint, 155.*

*rogavit quid facturi essent (or fuerint) si pugnandum esset.*

## 207. IRREGULAR CONSTRUCTIONS.

*perieram nisi tu accurrisses.* I had perished, had you not run to my assistance.

*si fractus illabatur orbis  
impavidum ferient ruinae.* If heaven be rent and on him fall  
The crashing mass will strike but not appal.

These are real exceptions, the ordinary form being discarded for one intended to add life and vividness to the expression. The same is done in English.

## 208. *si* = in case (semi-final).

*Hostes, si nostri flumen transirent, exspectabant; nostri autem, si ab eis transeundi initium fieret, ut impeditos in flumine adorirentur, parati in armis erant.*



The enemy were waiting in case our men should cross the river ; our men, on the other hand, were ready under arms in order to attack them at a disadvantage in the river, in case they should begin to cross.

In this type of sentence the apodosis to the *si*-clause must either be mentally supplied as in the first example above, or it is involved in a final clause as in the last example.

It is closely allied to Virtual *Oratio Obliqua*. This principle determines the mood, always Subjunctive. The tense is according to sequence.

*si*—semi-final—occurs after such verbs as *exspecto*, *experior*, etc. Compare the use of *dum* with the Subj. after such verbs, 191.

### EXERCISE XCI.

1. If the enemy should cross the river, Caesar would at once attack them.
2. If he is obeyed, we shall be spared.
3. If you return to the country you will be sorry for it.
4. If the enemy had conquered would they have spared us?
5. If he should repent of his wickedness I would forgive him.
6. If he had said this he would not have been believed by anyone.
7. If he were not so foolish he would be persuaded.
8. If I were to be asked my opinion about the matter I should say that we ought to make peace at once.
9. If the enemy had been routed yesterday the city would now be safe.
10. We would not have obeyed his order if we had known how base he was.

### EXERCISE XCII.

1. The whole army would have been destroyed if the enemy had pursued.
2. The whole army might have been destroyed if the enemy had pursued.
3. If Caesar were present with the army the enemy would not be so bold.
4. Verily, no other nation would have failed<sup>1</sup> to be overwhelmed<sup>2</sup> by such a disaster.
5. The cavalry would not have returned to the camp if the army were safe.<sup>2</sup>
6. If those fellows had followed Sempronius as their leader they would to-day be soldiers in the Roman camp, not slaves in the hands of the enemy.

7. If these were the words of Sempronius, I should consider you neither men nor Romans if no one had stood forth<sup>3</sup> to second<sup>4</sup> such valor.
8. If the ambassadors had merely asked to be ransomed<sup>5</sup> I should have expressed my opinion briefly.

<sup>1</sup> Express by **non**. <sup>2</sup> The **protasis** has sometimes to be supplied mentally. Sometimes it is represented by Abl. Abs. <sup>3</sup> **exsisto**, 3, **stiti**. <sup>4</sup> (As) a companion, **comes**. <sup>5</sup> **redimo**, 3, **emi**, **emptus**.

### EXERCISE XCIII.

But, fellow-citizens,<sup>1</sup> there are even some who say that Catiline has been driven into exile by me. Now, if I could accomplish it by a word I would cast out the very men who make this statement. But since there are men who say that he has been cast out when he has gone out, what would those same men say if he had been killed? There is no one of them so pitiful<sup>2</sup> as not to prefer that he should go to Manlius rather than to Marseilles. Moreover, he himself, even if he had never thought of this, that he is doing, still would prefer to be killed in brigandage<sup>3</sup> rather than live in exile. And if they had been willing to depart along with him sooner and not, as<sup>4</sup> is most foolish, had preferred to remain in the city, we should now find<sup>5</sup> them better citizens.

<sup>1</sup> **Quirites**. <sup>2</sup> **misericors**. <sup>3</sup> **latrocinari**. <sup>4</sup> **id quod**. <sup>5</sup> **utor**.

### EXERCISE XCIV.

1. If Caesar is afraid that the bridge has<sup>1</sup> been broken down he will not leave his camp.
2. He could have finished the work if he had had more time.
3. If the enemy once<sup>2</sup> cross the river I am afraid their advance cannot be resisted.
4. They could not have done this if they had tried.
5. If, soldiers, I were leading into battle line that army which I had with me in Gaul, it would have been unnecessary for me to speak to you; for what use<sup>3</sup> would there be in addressing those legions with which I pursued this very enemy in his flight and at last forced to surrender.
6. If you display the same spirit as you have always before had, the victory is ours, soldiers.
7. If we were going to recover by our valor Sicily and Sardinia merely (which were) wrung<sup>4</sup> from our fathers,<sup>5</sup> still the rewards would be ample<sup>6</sup> enough.
8. If anyone were to take away the standards and show him to-day Carthaginians and Romans, I am quite sure he would not know which army he is consul of.

si—semi-final.

9. Caesar was waiting in case perchance he might be able to draw out<sup>7</sup> the enemy on to his ground ; (and) if he was not able to effect this, in order that he might cross the valley and river with less danger.

10. He commissions this (leader) to keep back the Germans, who were said to have been appealed to<sup>8</sup> for aid<sup>9</sup> by the Belgae, if they should attempt to cross the river by boat.

11. He sends Minucius ahead with all the cavalry in the hope that he might gain<sup>10</sup> some advantage<sup>11</sup> by a quick march (quickness of march).

<sup>1</sup> 162, Footnote. <sup>2</sup> Tense? <sup>3</sup> refert. <sup>4</sup> eripio. <sup>5</sup> parens. <sup>6</sup> amplius. <sup>7</sup> elicio, 3, ui itus. <sup>8</sup> summoned, arcesso. <sup>9</sup> Dat. of Purpose. <sup>10</sup> proficere. <sup>11</sup> = something.

209.

## Virtual Oratio Obliqua.

Review 177.

The following examples should be examined carefully, and the construction understood :

si quid de his rebus dicere vellent,  
feci potestatem.

I gave them the opportunity (to speak) in case they wished to say anything about these matters.

illius patientiam paene obsessionem appellabant, si quidem ex castris egredi non liceret.

They kept calling his endurance practically a blockade, if they were not allowed to go out of the camp.

et, cum primum posset, in Venetos proficisci iubet.

And he orders him to set out into the country of the Veneti as soon as he is able.

magna proponit iis, qui occiderint, praemia.

He offers great rewards to those who killed or should kill him.

occiderint ; V.O.O. representing Fut. Pf. in O.R.

mortem tibi denuntiavit nisi paruisses.

vidit periculum esse, ne exutum impedimentis exercitum nequicquam incolumem traduxisset. Livy, xxi, 33.

## LESSON XLI.

## THE RELATIVE—RECAPITULATORY.

**210. Qui, with Indicative.**

Review the sentences under section 125 (3) and (4).

The Relative *qui* is used in Adjectival clauses containing statements of fact, whether of a particular or general character.

**211. Qui, with Subjunctive.**

The Relative is used in the following kinds of clauses requiring the Subjunctive :

I. In Final Clauses. Review 142.

II. In Consecutive Clauses. Review 153.

III. In Clauses of Characteristic. Review 156.

IV. In Causal Clauses. Review 180.

V. In Concessive Clauses. Review 185.

VI. In Conditional Clauses.

Compare the following with 201, 202, 203 :

*qui hoc dicit, errat.*

*qui hoc dicat, erret.*

*qui hoc dixisset, erravisset.*

**212. RECAPITULATORY.**

Compare the following :

**quoscumque cunctantes viderat, castigabat.**

He used to, or, would, chastise whomsoever he saw lagging behind.

**si quem cunctantem viderat, castigabat.**

**cum or quoties (ut or ubi) suos cunctantes viderat, adhortabatur.**

A Repeated Act in the Past is expressed by the Plupf. Indic. in the Subordinate Clause, and by the Impf. Indic. in the Principal Clause.

## 213. Similarly

quoscumque vīdit cunctantes, castigat.

He always chastises all whom he sees lagging behind.

The Perf. Indic. in the Subordinate Clause and the Pres. Indic. in the Principal Clause are used of Repeated Acts in the Present.

## EXERCISE XCV.

1. For then I pity those I do not know.
2. What I will not, that I cannot do.
3. The gods help those who help themselves.
4. I am the man whom thou didst pardon.
5. What he wanted to know, he asked of those who knew.
6. He sent a messenger secretly to tell his friends that he had now no army with which to protect the harbor, and no ships in which he might sail away to a place of safety.
7. You have chosen him (and him) alone from among all, to place over the war of the pirates.
8. What state is there in Asia which can endure the pride and insolence (**animos et spiritus**), I shall not say (**=not only**) of a general or lieutenant but of a single military tribune?
9. Wherefore even if you have someone<sup>1</sup> who seems able to crush the king's armies, yet unless he shall at the same time<sup>2</sup> be one who can restrain<sup>3</sup> his hands from the ornaments of shrines and towns, he will not be a proper person to be sent to the Asiatic war.
10. As often as any cohort ran forward, in that quarter a large number of the enemy would fall.
11. Whenever any cohort left the circle<sup>4</sup> and made an attack, the enemy would flee back very quickly.
12. Whenever our cavalry went out<sup>5</sup> into the country for the purpose of plundering and devastating more freely, the enemy engaged with them at great risk to our men.

---

<sup>1</sup> 128, quis. <sup>2</sup> 117. <sup>3</sup> cohibere. <sup>4</sup> orbis. <sup>5</sup> se eicere.

## LESSON XLII.

CONDITIONAL CLAUSES IN *ORATIO OBLIQUA*.

Review 53, 54, 55.

Acc. with Infin. forms a part of O.O.

Note for present purposes that all subordinate clauses are put in the Subj. in O.O.

We use Condit. clauses to illustrate the tense of the Subordinate clause in O.O.

Review Sequence of Tenses 148.

## 214.

## Type I.

## O.R.

si hoc dicis, erras.

si hoc dicebas, errabas.

si hoc dixisti, errasti.

si hoc dices, errabis.

si hoc feceris, poenas dabis.

## O.O. PRIMARY SEQUENCE.

dico—te, si hoc dicas, errare.

dico—te, si hoc diceres, erravisse.

dico—te, si hoc dixeris, erravisse.

dico—te, si hoc dicas, erraturum  
esse.

dico—te, si hoc feceris, poenas da-  
turum esse.

## O.O. HISTORIC SEQUENCE.

dixi—te, si hoc diceres, errare.

dixi—te, si hoc diceres, erravisse.

dixi—te, si hoc dixisses, erravisse.

dixi—te, si hoc diceres, erraturum esse.

dixi—te, si hoc fecisses, poenas daturum ēsse.

Note well that the fut. pf. indic. in O.R. becomes in O.O. Pf. Subj. in Primary Sequence, and Plupf. Subj. in Historic Sequence.

## 215.

## Type II.

## O.R.

si hoc dicas, erres.

## O.O. PRIMARY SEQUENCE.

dico—te, si hoc dicas, erraturum  
esse.

## O.O. HISTORIC SEQUENCE.

dixi—te, si hoc diceres, erra-  
turum esse.



216.

Type III.

O.R.

O.O. EITHER SEQUENCE.

si hoc diceret, erraret

dico } te, si hoc diceret, erratu-  
dixi } rum fuisse (esse).

si hoc dixisset, erravisset

dico } te, si hoc dixisset, erratu-  
dixi } rum fuisse.

Observe the form '*erraturum fuisse*.'

217.

fore ut.

I hope he will get well.

spero fore ut convalescat.

I hoped he would get well.

speravi fore ut convalesceret.

I hope the city will be taken.

spero { urbem captum iri.  
fore ut urbs capiatur.

'fore ut' is used (a) in the case of verbs that have no regular fut. infin.

(b) often in the passive with other verbs.

218.

futurum fuisse.

He said he would have taken the city.

dixit { se urbem capturum fuisse.  
futurum fuisse ut urbem  
caperet.

He said the city would have been taken.

dixit futurum fuisse ut urbs caperetur.

219.

Fut. Pf. Infin. Pass.

He hopes the city will have been taken.

sperat urbem captam fore.

---

## LESSON XLIII.

## INDIRECT NARRATION—ORATIO OBLIQUA.

Review 53, 54, 55.

Accusative with Infinitive forms a part of O.O.

Review 173.

Indirect Questions form a part of O.O.

Review 177.

Causal Subjunctive forms a part of O.O.—V.O.O.

Review 159.

Object Clauses after Verbs of Commanding, etc., form a part of O.O. (*ut* is often omitted).

220.

O.R.

O.O.

- (a) I saw the man who killed the king. He said he saw the man who killed the king.

*vidi eum qui regem interfecit. dixit se eum, qui regem interfecisset, vidisse.*

Principal Declarative Clauses are put in Acc. with Infin.

Relative Clauses are put in the Subj.

- (b) I came into Gaul before the Roman people did. What do you mean? Why do you come into my possessions? Ariovistus replied to Caesar that he had come into Gaul before the Roman people. What did he (Caesar) mean? Why did he come into his domain?

*ego prius in Galliam veni quam populus Romanus. Quid tibi vis? cur in meas possessiones venis? Ariovistus Caesari respondit; se prius in Galliam venisse quam populum Romanum. Quid sibi vellet? cur in suas possessiones veniret?*

Interrogative Clauses are put in the Subj.

Subordinate Clauses are put in the Subj., Lesson xlii.

- (c) What is more trivial or more disgraceful than to adopt a plan on the advice of an enemy? What was more trivial, etc.

**quid est levius aut turpius quid esse levius, etc.**  
**quam auctore hoste con-**  
**silium capere.**

Your children have gone.

Their children had gone.

When will they return?

When would they return?

**profecti sunt liberi vestri.**

**iam liberos illorum profectos**  
**esse.**

**quando redituri sunt?**

**quando redituros fore?**

Rhetorical questions are put in the Acc. with Infin.

Such questions are merely strong statements of fact ;

(Nothing could be more trivial ; they will never return.)

(d) Do not despoil us of our arms. Let him not despoil them of their arms.

**ne nos armis despoliā or de-** **ne se armis despoliaret.**  
**spoliaveris (166).**

Stop the battle for a little while.

He told the soldiers to stop the battle for a little while.

**paulisper intermittite proe-**  
**lium.**

**milites certiores facit, paulisper**  
**intermitterent proelium.**

Do not move your camp nearer us.

They intreated him not to move the camp nearer them.

**ne propius nos castra movē**  
**or moveris (166).**

**ne propius se castra moveret**  
**petierunt.**

The Imperative is put in the Subj.

## 221. General Rule for O.O.

In O.O. Principal Declarative Clauses are put in the Acc. with Infin. All Relative, Interrogative, Imperative and Subordinate Clauses are put in the Subj.

But Interrogative Clauses that are merely Rhetorical are put in the Acc. with Infin.

## 222. SPECIAL POINTS.

### (1) The Co-ordinating Relative.

**quae fore suspicatus, Labienus equites praemittit.**

Labienus, suspecting that this would occur, sends forward the cavalry.

**sed hostes, ubi, quos fugere credebant, in se ire viderunt, statim terga verterunt.**

But the enemy, when they saw that those, who they believed were fleeing, were advancing upon themselves, immediately turned their backs.

When the Relative, as often in Latin, takes the place of a Demonstrative it follows the construction of a principal clause.

(2) Clauses already in the Subj. will remain so.

What am I to do?

**quid faciam?** (Delib. Subj.)

Whither are we to go?

**quo eamus?**

What was he to do?

**quid faceret?**

Whither were they to go?

**quo irent?** or

**quo sibi eundum esse?**

(when looked upon as rhetorical.)

Let us not despair.

**ne desperemus.** (Hort. Subj.)

**ne desperarent,** or oftener

**non esse desperandum.**

(3) **referunt silvam esse ibi infinitā magnitudine quae appellatur Bacenis.**

The Indic. sometimes appears in a clause in the midst of *Oratio Obliqua*. Such a clause is an Independent Statement made by the writer or reporter, and is added by way of explanation.

(4) The Sequence of Tenses is sometimes changed in a reported speech. A change from Historic Sequence to Primary is made for the sake of vividness, to give more life to the speaker's words.

(5) The Introducing Verb is often not definitely expressed, being implied in some word or phrase. See page 187, Ex. 75.

**Aedui legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium :** etc. (saying).  
**eos hortatus est ne flumen transiret :** etc. (saying).

## 223. CHANGES IN PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS.

**O.R.**

**O.O.**

I told you this yesterday.      He had told him that on the previous day.  
**haec tibi heri dixi.**      (**dixit**) **se illi eā pridie dixisse.**

1. **ego, nos,** become **se** (in the Nom. **ipse, ipsi**).

**meus, noster,** become **suus**.

2. **tu, vos,** become **ille** (sometimes **is**).

**tuus, vester,** become **illius, illorum ; ipsius, ipsorum**.

3. *hic* and *iste*, become *ille* or *is*.

4. *nunc*, *hodie*, *hic*, *heri*, *cras*, become respectively *tum* or *tunc*, *illo die*, *ibi* or *illic*, *pridie*, *postridie*.

NOTE 1.—Violations of these general principles occur. The pronouns and adverbs of O.R. are sometimes left unchanged. In Caesar we find *nos* and *noster* occurring in O.O. Instead of *ille* we find the proper name.

NOTE 2.—It is possible that the original speaker might also be the reporter and the person originally addressed, the person addressed by the reporter. In that case the pronouns would not change as above stated.

### EXERCISE XCVI.

Write the following in O.O. Historic Sequence.

A.

quid vos hanc miseram ac tenuem sectamini praedam, quibus licet iam esse fortunatissimis? tribus horis Aduatucam venire potestis: huc omnes suas fortunas exercitus Romanorum contulit: praesidii tantum est, ut ne murus quidem cingi possit neque quisquam egredi extra munitiones audeat.

B.

habetis, milites, quam petistis, facultatem: hostem impedito atque iniquo loco tenetis: praestate eandem nobis ducibus virtutem, quam saepenumero imperatori praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec coram cernere existimate.

C.

quid dubitas, Vorene? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtutis expectas? hic dies de nostris controversiis iudicabit.

### EXERCISE XCVII.

Write the following (a) in O.R.  
(b) in O.O. Historic Sequence.

“On ascertaining the locality or route of the troops, proceed at once to annoy them in every possible way. Use every exertion to capture their animals and set fire to their trains. Burn the whole country before them and on their flanks. Keep them from sleeping by night surprises; blockade the road by felling trees or destroying bridges where you can. Keep your men concealed as much as possible and guard against surprises. Save life always when it is possible; we do not wish to shed a drop of blood if it can be avoided.”

## ADDITIONAL HINTS ON TRANSLATION.

I.—‘Translate the thought, the whole thought, and nothing but the thought,’ is the first principle in Latin Prose. This applies not only to single words and phrases, but to sentences and extracts. When you see the adjective ‘right,’ you have to consider whether it means ‘proper,’ ‘suitable,’ *aptus, commodus, idoneus*; ‘sound,’ as applied to the mind, ‘*sanus*’; or refers to the hand, ‘*dexter*’; or means ‘true,’ *verus*; or ‘just,’ *aequus, iustus*. The proper conception of the meaning of a sentence will in some measure determine the order of the words. The thought must be expressed simply, forcibly and elegantly. To express it forcibly you must know the emphatic word; and in Latin writing you can by the arrangement of the words indicate the importance of words as clearly as you do in spoken English by the tone of the voice. In the same way you must grasp the exact, true meaning of the extract, and give each part of it its proper force and setting.

II.—Latin admits of only logical relations. English, particularly in connection with nouns, allows loose constructions in great numbers which have no place in Latin. In ‘the battle of Cannae’ ‘of’ does not indicate a Genitive relation. You must say *pugna Cannensis* or *pugna ad Cannas facta*. In Exercise LI, ‘the battle of the swamp’ should have been expressed by *pugna ad puludem* or *in palude facta*. ‘To his brother in Rome’ is *ad fratrem qui Romae erat*, if the intention is to distinguish ‘the brother in Rome’ from other brothers; but generally the meaning intended is *Romam ad fratrem suum*, and in no case can the English idiom be reproduced in Latin. This principle is of wide application, and is closely related to the general precision and truthfulness of Latin. In ‘you began the war with Saguntum, you must finish it with Rome,’ ‘Saguntum’ and ‘Rome’ are too abstract to be admissible; they must be reduced to the concrete ‘Saguntines’ and ‘Romans.’ In this connection it should also be noted that abstract terms or inanimate things cannot to any great extent be personified, and so be represented as agents; they should only be represented as the cause or means. ‘Neither arms defended the valiant nor submission the timorous,’ and all such expressions are quite inadmissible in Latin. You must express in some such



way as this: '*neque fortes pugnando neque cedendo timidi servabantur.*'

III.—From the foregoing it is at once apparent how unsatisfactory and almost useless it is to consult vocabulary or dictionary. The student must remember that any ordinary piece of prose can be translated without using a single word with which he is not absolutely familiar. All extension of vocabulary and power of expression must proceed from the reverse process of thorough familiarity with the authors he is reading. The method to be pursued has its counterpart in the method by which the child learns the English language. The child adapts its thought to its vocabulary, and is seldom unable to give expression to what is in its mind. The expansion of its ideas and expansion of its power of expression advance simultaneously, and are simply a matter of growth and experience derived from numerous sources. So it is with the study of Latin; and in the writing of continuous prose it is not so much a matter of knowing words as it is of the power of adaptation to Roman methods of thought. The student must reduce the thought to its most simple, direct form, and translate according to the methods of Roman expression, remembering that the simplest Latin is invariably the best.

## MODELS.

### BALANCE AND PROPORTION OF CLAUSES.

*Tandem aliquando, Quirites, L. Catilinam, furem audaciā, scelus anhelantem, pestem patriae nefarie molientem, vobis atque huic urbi ferro flammāque minitantem, ex urbe vel eiecimus, vel emisimus, vel ipsum egredientem verbis prosecuti sumus.*

At last, then, Romans, we have cast forth or allowed to go from the city or have accompanied with expressions of farewell on his voluntary departure therefrom, Lucius Catiline, frenzied with audacity, breathing forth wickedness, wickedly plotting destruction against the country, threatening you and this city with fire and sword.

*Rem publicam, Quirites, vitamque omnium vestrum, bona, fortunas, coniuges, liberosque vestros, atque hoc domicilium clarissimi imperii, fortunatissimam pulcherrimamque urbem, hodierno die deorum immortalium summo erga vos amore, laboribus, consiliis, periculis*

meis, e flamma atque ferro ac paene ex faucibus fati ereptam et vobis conservatam ac restitutam videtis.

#### IMPASSIONED ATTACK.

Ut igitur in seminibus est causa arborum et stirpium, sic huius luctuosissimi belli semen tu fuisti. Doletis tres exercitus populi Romani interfectos: interfecit Antonius. Desideratis clarissimos cives: eos quoque nobis eripuit Antonius. Auctoritas huius ordinis adflicta est: adflixit Antonius. Omnia denique, quae postea vidimus—quid autem mali non vidimus?—si recte ratiocinabimur, uni accepta referemus Antonio. Ut Helena Troianis, sic iste huic reipublicae causa pestis atque exitii fuit.

#### A NICE PERIOD.

Alco, insciis Saguntinis, precibus aliquid moturum ratus, cum ad Hannibalem noctu transisset, postquam nihil lacrimae movebant condicionesque tristes ut ab irato victore ferebantur, transfuga ex oratore factus apud hostem mansit, moriturum affirmans, qui sub condicionibus iis de pace ageret.

Cn. Servilius consul, levibus proeliis cum Gallis factis et uno oppido ignobili expugnato, postquam de collegae exercitusque caede audivit, iam moenibus patriae metuens, ne abesset in discrimine extremo, ad urbem iter intendit.

Inter haec ab Hasdrubale, postquam a Placentiae obsidione abscessit, duo Numidae, cum litteris ad Hannibalem missi, cum per medios hostes totam ferme longitudinem Italiae emensi essent, dum Metapontum cedentem Hannibalem sequuntur, incertis itineribus Tarentum delati, a vagis per agros pabulatoribus Romanis ad Q. Claudium propraetorem deducuntur.

#### EXERCISES.

##### 1.

There the cavalry halted as if at the end of their march, and when Hannibal in astonishment asked what was the cause of the delay, answer was made that the rock was impassable.

Same piece adapted.

There when the cavalry had halted as if at the end of the journey, to Hannibal wondering what thing was delaying the line, it is announced that the rock is impassable (*invius*).

## 2.

Hannibal thought he ought not to give their statements a too ready acceptance; at the same time he did not wish to entirely ignore them. A rebuff might turn them into open hostility. His reply, accordingly, was courteous. He received the hostages which they offered and availed himself of the supplies which they had proffered for the march. He did not, however, assume that he was among a peaceful population but followed their guides with his army in regular formation.

Same piece adapted.

Hannibal, thinking he ought neither rashly to believe nor scorn (**aspernor** used impersonally) (them), lest being rejected (**repudiare**) they might become enemies openly, after he had replied courteously, having received the hostages, which they were giving, and using the supplies which they themselves had offered (**defero**) for (**in** with Acc.) the journey, by no means as (**ut**) among peaceful (people) follows their guides with column in proper formation (**compositus**).

## 3.

The advance began at daybreak, but as everything was covered with snow the line made slow progress. Advancing ahead of the line, Hannibal ordered the soldiers to halt on an eminence, from which an extensive view could be had from all sides, and directs their gaze to Italy and the plains around the Po, lying at the foot of the Alps. They were then, he assured them, crossing not the fortified walls of Italy merely, but those of the Roman city as well.

Same piece adapted.

Through all things covered (**oppletus**) with snow, when, the standards having been moved at daybreak, the line was advancing slowly, going ahead of (**praegredior** with Acc.) the standards, Hannibal, to the soldiers, ordered to halt on a certain eminence (**promontorium**) from which there was a view (**prospectus**) far and wide, points out Italy and the plains around the Po (**Circumpadanus**) lying at the foot of (**sub-jectus**) the Alpine mountains, and (says) that they are then crossing the walls not only of Italy but also of the Roman city.

## 4.

While all were overjoyed at hearing the words of Mago, Himilco, thinking that an opportunity was presented<sup>1</sup> for reproaching<sup>2</sup> Hanno, says: "Well,<sup>3</sup> Hanno! are you now sorry<sup>4</sup> for the war undertaken against Rome? Bid Hannibal be surrendered; forbid in the face of<sup>5</sup> such success that thanks be tendered to the immortal gods; let us hear the Roman senator in the Carthaginian<sup>6</sup> senate-house."

<sup>1</sup>=there was. <sup>2</sup>=**increpo**, 1. <sup>3</sup>=**quid est**? <sup>4</sup>it repents. <sup>5</sup>**in** with Abl. <sup>6</sup>Of the Carthaginians.

## 5.

Then Hanno (replied): "I would have kept my seat to-day, Gentlemen, in order that amid the general rejoicing I might not say anything

to detract from your joy ; now, however, when a senator questions me whether I am still against the war with Rome, silence upon my part might be construed as either pride or servility, of which the former betokens a man who has not sufficient respect for the liberty of others ; the latter, one who has not sufficient respect for his own liberty."

Same piece adapted.

"I would have kept silent to-day, Conscript Fathers, in order that amid the common joy of all I might not say anything which could be less joyous to you ; now, to the senator questioning me, whether it still repents me of the war undertaken against the Romans, if I should be silent (*reticeo*) I should appear either proud or servile (*obnoxius*) of which the one is (the characteristic) of a man (who has) forgotten other people's liberty, the other (of a man who has forgotten) his own (liberty).

#### 6.—PERIODIC.

The townspeople, after forming a junction with the exiles of the Olcades, a tribe subdued in the previous summer, stir up<sup>1</sup> the Carpetani, and having attacked Hannibal on his return<sup>2</sup> from (the territory of) the Vaccaei, not far from the river Tagus, threw his army, laden with plunder, into confusion.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup>*incitare*. <sup>2</sup>*regredior*. <sup>3</sup>Throw into confusion—*turbare*.

#### 7.—PERIODIC.

Hannibal pitched his camp on the bank, but as soon as rest and silence settled down<sup>1</sup> upon the enemy, crossed the river by a ford, and leaving sufficient room for the enemy to cross, determined to attack them in the act of crossing.

<sup>1</sup>= was on the part of—*fuit ab*.

#### 8.—PERIODIC.

The day was spent in making all necessary preparations. They made a fortified<sup>1</sup> camp on the ground where they had halted. As soon as he saw that the mountaineers had gone down from the heights, fires were kindled<sup>2</sup> in greater number than the number of those who remained would indicate,<sup>4</sup> for appearance sake,<sup>3</sup> and leaving the baggage and the cavalry and the larger<sup>5</sup> part of the foot, he himself, with a light-armed force,<sup>6</sup> (consisting of) all his most active<sup>7</sup> men, hurriedly went through<sup>8</sup> the pass and encamped on the very hills which the enemy had held.

<sup>1</sup>Make fortified—*communio*. <sup>2</sup>=made. <sup>4</sup>*in speciem*. <sup>3</sup>Express by *quam pro*. <sup>5</sup>Largest. <sup>6</sup>Light-armed (men) *expeditus*. <sup>7</sup>*acer*, each most active man. <sup>8</sup>*superare*.

#### 9.

While these events are happening at Rome and in Italy, a herald (*nuntius*) of the victory at Cannae had come to Carthage, Mago, son of Hamilcar, not despatched directly (*ipse*) from the battle-field by his brother, but (after) being detained for several days in receiving (*re-cipio*) the allegiance of the states of the Brutii.

## 10.

About thirty senators, and, as it happened (**forte**), all the leading (**primus quisque**) men, made for Capua, but not being allowed to enter (the city) (**excludere inde**) because they had closed the gates against Hannibal, they betook (**se conferre**) themselves to Cumae. At Nuceria the booty was given to the soldiers; the city was plundered and burned.

## 11.

Just before (**sub**) the arrival of the Roman praetor, the Carthaginian had left the territory of Nola (**ager Nolanus**) and descends to the sea, very close to (**proxime**) Naples, being anxious to gain possession of a maritime town in order that<sup>1</sup> there might be a safe voyage (**cur-sus**) to the ships from Africa; but when he heard that Naples was held by a Roman officer (**praefectus**) he makes for Nuceria.

<sup>1</sup> Say, whither, **quo**; final adv.

## 12.—PRECISION OF TENSE.

1. We shall wait until our friend arrives.
2. The man who does this will be punished.
3. We will come if we can.
4. I will spare you if you surrender before the battering-ram touches (**attingo**) the wall.
5. When our friend returns we will come to the city.
6. If ever I return to my native Argos I will avenge my friend.
7. If you break the laws of the land, the state will punish you.
8. If you break this law you will be put to death.

## 13.—PARTICIPLES.

1. While these are fighting around the standard, the king got safely away.
2. Quintus Lucanius fighting bravely is killed while he is coming to the aid of his son (who is) surrounded.
3. Some in their flight fall in with (mid. of **infero**) a knot (**globus**) of fighters and stick (**haereo**) to it.
4. Others while returning into the fight are turned aside by the line of fugitives. (Turn into active form.)
5. The report of the disaster at Cannae created panic and consternation at Rome.
6. These men hope to get, while the republic is in a state of disorder (**purturbata**) what they despair of getting while it is in a state of peace (**quieta**) (Abl. Abs.).

## 14.—DATIVE.

1. I cannot now forget that this is my native land, that I am the consul of these men, that I must either live with them or die on their behalf.



2. The conspirators then proceeded to the gaol, and having liberated the prisoners, supplied them with arms.
3. Caius Trebonius who had been placed in command of the garrison, despairing of his own safety and (that) of the unarmed, requested Caesar to send all the cavalry to his aid.
4. Seeing that the spirits of the Saguntines had risen with their successful defense of the citadel, Hannibal withdrew his forces across the river in order to give them needed rest and repose.
5. Trusting more to policy than good luck, he won over the sympathies of this wild tribe by a copious distribution of plunder.
6. Fearing that he might come into contempt with the enemy, if he removed all fear of his return from this barbarous chief, he sent a column of a thousand horse to burn down the fortified village, to which he was in the habit of repairing, whenever he was unable to resist the advance of the Romans.

#### 15.—ABLATIVE.

1. Using as guides the ambassadors who had come from the Veneti to complain of the illegal acts of the Remi, he set out at daybreak at the head of five legions.
2. Confusion reigned throughout the whole camp and many of the soldiers had not (sufficient) presence of mind (*consilium*) to keep the enemy out of the gates.
3. The Romans often availed themselves of the noble and loyal services of this chief during that war.
4. And indeed I make these promises to you, relying not on my own foresight or on the counsels of man, but on the numerous and undoubted manifestations of the immortal gods, under whose leadership I have entertained this hope and sentiment.
5. Do you hesitate to do at my command what you already were attempting to do of your own accord.

#### 16.—REVIEW ON THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

1. The consul directed his efforts (*operam dare*) towards appeasing the gods and raising a levy.
2. Sick people sometimes do themselves more good by rest than by motion and action.
3. The consuls thought they ought to take measures (*cogitare*) earlier than formerly for war.
4. He placed a young man in command of the cavalry which he had summoned from the province.
5. He handed these hostages over to the Aedui to guard.
6. When this was heard a universal shout was raised that men who were willing to betray their country should be put to death.
7. Caesar was of the opinion that he should neither now listen to the ambassadors nor accept terms from men who, after seeking peace,



had through guile and treachery been the first (**ultro**) to begin hostilities (**bellum inferre**); moreover, he judged it to be the height of madness to wait until the forces of the enemy were increased and their cavalry returned.

8. On the following day in the morning the Germans, resorting to (**utor**) the same deception (**perfidia**), came in large numbers to him to clear themselves. Caesar was delighted that they had come to him and ordered them to be seized at once.

## 17.

1. Love of glory is a great incentive to soldiers for fighting bravely.
2. Two thousand horse and ten thousand foot were left to guard the baggage.
3. They reported that the country was in the possession of Hannibal and that the city also soon would be.
4. You have a leader mindful of you, forgetful of himself.
5. I desire, Conscript Fathers, to be merciful, but I already condemn myself for inaction and incapacity.
6. The boy was silent when he was asked what he was doing.
7. During these events Q. Fabius Pictor as legate had returned from Delphi to Rome.
8. They all scattered through the cities of Campania, especially (**maxime**) to Nola and Naples.

## 18.

1. I hope that you will do your utmost to keep your word. You have been looked for now these ten days.
2. Instead of keeping his word to consult the interests of the state rather than his own, he preferred to listen to the advice of men who were never trusted by the best citizens.
3. In his ninetieth year he was still able to answer those who consulted him.
4. He asks for a trustworthy Gaul to carry a communication to Caesar.
5. After the loss of their ships the Athenians had no means of returning safely home.
6. Guides were sent to conduct the Greeks to some villages where they might obtain food.
7. The soldiers left for the war to-day. May they all return home safe.
8. Are we born to be slaves or kings?
9. Did you come here of your own accord or were you forced to come?
10. Do you prefer to die freemen or live as slaves?
11. Have you come here to fight to the last for your country, or to surrender to a cruel foe?

## 19.—CAUSAL RELATIVE AND V. O. O.

1. Inasmuch as Volusenus did not dare to land from his ship and entrust himself to the barbarians, he was unable to discover the strength of their forces.
2. He reports the result of his observations on the island.
3. Although Cicero, with his usual foresight, had kept his soldiers in the camp during all the previous days and had not allowed even a camp-follower to go outside the fortification, on the seventh day, no longer believing it possible for Caesar to return by the appointed day, he sent five cohorts into the nearest fields to forage.
4. He thanked me because I had sent Trebatius to him.
5. He swore vengeance on the guide because he had led him into this trap.
6. O fortunate young man, in that you have been of great service to your country!
7. One of the captives went off home, because by his false (**fallax**) return (**reditus ūs**) he had released himself (as he thought) from his oath.
8. The only complaint he made was that the cohorts had been allowed to go outside the entrenchments.
9. After expressing his strong disapprobation of their conduct in recommencing hostilities after sending ambassadors and making peace proposals, Caesar said he would pardon their thoughtlessness.

## 20.

1. Few people know how many dangers this young prince has experienced.
2. It is questionable if there is any man living at the present time who has had so many escapes from death.
3. From his childhood upwards his life has been constantly imperilled.
4. When only six months old he escaped death almost by a miracle.
5. Four years afterwards, the prince's life was saved by an Irish soldier.
6. He would have been killed by the fall of a horse had it not been for the promptness with which a soldier, who was passing by, pulled him out of danger.
7. Curiously enough<sup>1</sup> the soldier was not aware, until many years had passed, that the boy whose life he had saved had grown to be the King of France.
8. You did not want to do what I told you to do.
9. I could have done it if I had had time enough.
10. He has been advised to spend the winter in Italy.
11. It cannot be helped; we shall have to stay here until it stops raining.

<sup>1</sup> Wonderful to relate.

## 21.—‘WOULD.’

1. He must have followed us, for I am sure he would not have come alone.
2. I was afraid he would not come.
3. I was persuaded he would not come.
4. If you would promise to do this he would come.
5. He would not come when I urged him to do this.
6. Whenever he was sure he would see us here, he would come.
7. Would that he would come.
8. If you had not done this he would not know who you are.
9. After having gone about ten miles in advance of the regiment we began to move very cautiously as we were now nearing the enemy.
10. The general at once ordered his men to prepare for action.
11. Acting on my suggestion the general made a circuit towards the river, believing that, if the enemy had their scouts out, they would naturally be watching in the direction whence they had come.

## 22.—SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

1. In reference to the armies they decreed that the consul should proclaim to the two city legions the day for their assembling at Cales: that from there those legions should be conducted into the camp of Claudius; that the praetor should transport into Sicily the legions which were there and bring back (*deporto*) to Rome those that were in Sicily.
2. And yet no state of the Germans could be persuaded to cross the Rhine or bring aid to their friends.
3. He commands Cassivelaunus not to injure Mandubratius or the Trinobantes.
4. It happened that the soldiers were going away from the standards.
5. He warns him to make his journey cautiously and carefully.
6. They despatched messengers into all parts (to tell the people) to leave (*demigrare*) the towns.
7. The Gauls exhorted one another not to let slip (*dimitto*) the long desired plunder from their grasp (hands).
8. They sent ambassadors to Caesar to entreat him not to regard (*habeo*) them as enemies or conclude (*iudicare*) that the cause of all the Germans who were this side of (*citra*) the Rhine was one (and the same).
9. He issued orders (to the effect) that if any (of the) Eburones had come to them, they were to be brought back to him.
10. He commissions this (leader) to keep back the Germans who were said to have been summoned as aid by the Belgae, if they should attempt to cross the river by boat (ships).

11. When Caesar sent messengers to them to demand that they should surrender to him those who had taken the field (made war) against himself and Gaul, they refused them a hearing.
12. In the meantime he sent messengers to the captains who had gone ahead with all the cavalry to tell them not to attack (*lacersere*) the enemy in battle and if they themselves were attacked, to hold out until he himself came up (*accedere*) nearer.
13. In the meantime the Trinobantes promise to surrender to him and obey (do) his commands; they beg him to protect (*defendo*) Mandubratius from injury by (of) Cassivelaunus and send the young man into their state to be at its head and hold the sovereign power.
14. He warns them to prohibit the making of fires in the camp.

23.—ACC. WITH INFIN. AFTER CAUSAL PARTICIPIAL PHRASES.

1. Caesar, seeing that the seventh legion, which had taken up position near by, was likewise hard pressed, sent the tenth legion to support them.
2. The camp-followers looking back and seeing the enemy moving about in our camp fled precipitately.
3. Caesar, setting out to the right wing and seeing that his men were being surrounded by the enemy, ordered a retreat across the river.
4. The camp-followers, observing that our men had crossed the river victorious, returned and attacked the enemy in the rear.
5. After advancing a little farther from the camp and noticing that the hills were held by a superior force of the enemy, our cavalry returned to camp and awaited the arrival of reinforcements.
6. Being persuaded that the Germans intended to come into Gaul, Caesar determined to attack them in their own country.
7. The Germans, perceiving that the army of the Roman people had both the courage and ability to cross the Rhine, were afraid for their own country.
8. Learning that the army had left its winter quarters earlier than usual and knowing that a large force of the enemy was near at hand, he sent a despatch to Caesar warning him of the danger.

24.

Translate the thought, the whole thought, and nothing but the thought.

The orator's statement of the evils inherent (*insitus*) in modern society was clear and concise.

Fearful of the capture of the relieving force, he ordered an immediate advance of all available forces.

The common people demand the retention of the islands.

No attempt to capture the king's murderer was made.

The opposition to the passing of such a law (—bill—*rogatio*) is vigorous.

The two factions effected a union just before the election.

Our representatives on the commission have demanded the surrender of the entire group of islands.

The Senate indicated its willingness to acquiesce in the manifest demand of the people.

The nation has no desire to press its demand for additional hostages at the risk of war.

The probable result of our withdrawal from the islands would be civil war among the inhabitants themselves.

Such a desertion of a people whom we have almost liberated seems to us dishonorable and selfish, not to say inhuman.

Few believe that the enemy have any intention of forcing a renewal of the war.

We must not forget that this war was undertaken not for conquest, but for liberation.

We clearly cannot exercise permanent governmental authority over the islands except by the request, or at least with the approval, of the inhabitants.

## 25.

The chiefs, when they saw that our men were resisting so bravely and that there was no hope of the speedy capture of the camp, sent ambassadors to Cicero to say that they desired a parley. When leave was granted they told the same story that the king had told Titurius: that the Germans had crossed the river and all Gaul was in arms. They add that Titurius had perished with his whole army; but they had no wish to hurt Cicero or his men; their sole desire was to prevent the Romans from quartering their legions permanently in the country. If he were willing to leave his camp, he was free to go without fear where he pleased.

## 26.

Both had advanced unarmed, (but) without any apprehension, a considerable distance from their own (side), when<sup>1</sup> the stalwart<sup>2</sup> young<sup>3</sup> Roman caught up<sup>4</sup> the feeble old man in the sight of all, and bore him off<sup>5</sup> to his own (side) in spite<sup>6</sup> of the outcries<sup>7</sup> of the Etruscans. He<sup>8</sup> was carried straight to the general, and then<sup>9</sup> despatched to the senate at Rome. They<sup>8</sup> asked him what all this meant<sup>10</sup> that he had been preaching<sup>11</sup> about the Alban lake. He<sup>8</sup> replied that verily<sup>12</sup> the gods were wroth against the people of Veii<sup>13</sup> on the day when they requested him to unfold<sup>14</sup> the fated destruction<sup>15</sup> of the native city.<sup>16</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Subordinate the sentences logically. <sup>2</sup>*praevalens*. <sup>3</sup>Roman young man. <sup>4</sup>*rapio*. <sup>5</sup>*transfero*. <sup>6</sup>*A.A.* <sup>7</sup>*tumultuo*, 1. <sup>8</sup>These three sentences can all be put into one period. <sup>9</sup>Thence. <sup>10</sup>What (*quidnam*) that was which. <sup>11</sup>*doceo*. <sup>12</sup>Assuredly. <sup>13</sup>Adj. *Veiens, tis*. <sup>14</sup>*prodo*. <sup>15</sup>*excidium*. <sup>16</sup>native land.



## 27.

A vast multitude set out and filled the camp to overflowing.<sup>1</sup> The Dictator now<sup>2</sup> came forth, and when he had issued commands<sup>3</sup> for the soldiers to get under<sup>4</sup> arms, exclaimed:<sup>5</sup> "Under thy guidance, Apollo, I proceed<sup>6</sup> to<sup>7</sup> destroy the city of Veii, and of the spoils thereof<sup>8</sup> I vow<sup>9</sup> a tithe to thee; and thee likewise, Queen Juno, who now watchest over<sup>10</sup> Veii, I beseech that you attend<sup>11</sup> us in our victorious march back to the city that is ours and is soon to be thine, that there<sup>12</sup> a temple worthy of thy majesty<sup>13</sup> may receive thee."

<sup>1</sup>repleo. <sup>2</sup>then, connective word. <sup>3</sup>edico. <sup>4</sup>take (up). <sup>5</sup>Use inquit. <sup>6</sup>pergo. <sup>7</sup>ad, with gerundive. <sup>8</sup>hinc. <sup>9</sup>voveo. <sup>10</sup>colo. <sup>11</sup>follow, escort. <sup>12</sup>Say, where, final clause. <sup>13</sup>amplitudo, inis.

## 28.

## A.

1. The Turks within the citadel suddenly found that they were besiegers rather than besieged.
2. The darkness of night made it easier for the enemy to approach close to the camp without being seen. See page 158, II.
3. Nine months later the slave paid the penalty of his life for his fraud.
4. Ten months had passed away after the conquest of Antioch when the main body of the invading army set out on its march for Jerusalem.

## B.

The father of a family came one day to Aristippus the philosopher and asked him to undertake the education of his son. The philosopher demanding five hundred drachms as a fee, the father being a very covetous man told the philosopher that he could purchase a slave for less money. "Do so," said Aristippus, "and then you will have two."

## 29.—ADDRESS OF DIONYSIUS TO THE IONIANS.

We must to-day decide whether we shall be freemen or slaves: now, if you are willing to undertake hardships, for the present you will have toil, but will be enabled by overcoming your enemies to be free: on the other hand, if you desire only to be at leisure, I have no hope that you will escape punishment at the hands of the king for your revolt; be persuaded by me, therefore, and I promise you that either our enemies will not fight us at all, or if they do fight with us they shall be completely beaten.

## 30.—SPEECH OF ARTABANUS BEFORE XERXES.

I warned your father, O king, not to make war upon the Scythians, a people who have no city in any part of their territory; but he, hoping to subdue the Scythian hordes, heeded not my advice, and, having led an army against them, returned with the loss of many brave men of his army. Now you, O king, are about to make war upon men far superior



to the Scythians, who are said to be most valiant both by sea and land; it is therefore right that I should inform you of the danger we have to fear. You say that having thrown a bridge over the Hellespont you will march an army through Europe into Greece; now it may happen that we shall be worsted either by land or by sea, for we know that the Athenians alone destroyed so great an army that invaded the Attic territory under Datis and Artaphernes. Now if they should attack us with their fleet, **and**, having obtained a naval victory, should sail to the Hellespont and destroy the bridge, this surely, O king, would be a great danger.

## 31.

Of all those who fought at Thermopylae Dieneces is said to have been the bravest. Before the battle began a Trachinian said that when the barbarians let fly their arrows they would obscure<sup>1</sup> the sun by the multitude of their shafts, so great were their numbers. On hearing this remark, Dieneces was not at all alarmed, but, holding in contempt the numbers of the Medes, told his fellow-soldiers that their friend told them what was to their advantage, since, if the Medes obscured the sun, they would then fight in the shade and not in the sun.

<sup>1</sup> **obscurare.**

## 32.—ORATIO OBLIQUA.

1. He points out that unless they do so (shall have done) he will devastate their country.
2. If he offers violence (**vim facere**) and does not obey, he orders him to be killed, thinking that this man would do nothing like a sane man (**pro sano**) in his absence, inasmuch as he (**qui** Causal) had disregarded (**negligo**) his command while present (the command of [him] present).
3. On being called back he began to resist, often shouting that he was a free man and of a free state.
4. They ordered a proclamation to be made that no one should leave his place: the plunder was theirs (they said) and whatever the Romans left behind was reserved for them; therefore let them consider that everything depended on victory.
5. He orders the lieutenants to see that as many ships as possible are built during the winter.
6. Caesar determined that he must restrain (**coerceo**) Dumnorix by whatever means (**res**) he was able.
7. He writes to Labienus to build as many ships as possible with those legions which are with him.
8. They thought they ought to do nothing rashly and not go away from the winter camp.
9. In the letter he writes that he has set out and will be there with all speed.
10. He writes to Labienus to come to him with one legion if he can do so without danger.
11. He sends a messenger to Fabius (telling him) to lead the legion into the territory of the Atrebatas.

12. He issues orders (**praecipio**) that all were to make for Indutiomarus alone and that no one was to wound anyone until he saw him killed.
13. He maintained that neither otherwise (**aliter**) would the Carnutes have formed the plan of killing Tasgetius nor would the Eburones dare to come to our camp if Caesar were present.
14. A proclamation was issued (announcing) that Thebes was free, and calling upon all citizens who valued their liberty to muster in the market-place.
15. After receiving hostages he assures them that he will regard them as enemies if they admit (**recipio**) either Ambiorix or his ambassadors within their territory.
16. They order a proclamation to be made that if anyone either (**seu quis**) Gaul or (**seu**) Roman wishes to cross over to them before the third hour he may do so without danger; after that time there will be no opportunity (**potestas**).
17. In the council he announces that he has been summoned by the Senones and several other states of Gaul; that he will go there through the territory of the Remi and will devastate their lands and before he does this he will attack the camp of Labienus.
18. He sends a messenger to him to ask him to spare him and the soldiers. The other replies that if he wishes he may converse with him: he hopes his request can be obtained from the multitude as far as (**quod**) pertains to the safety of the soldiers; to himself however no harm would be done.
19. Caesar, thinking that they ought to but would not send hostages, exhorts them not to cross the river. When they were distant from him about three miles they sent a messenger to say that if he were willing to receive them on surrender they would not leave their country. Caesar, perceiving how large a number of them there was, gave them the opportunity neither of crossing the river nor of ascertaining what he was doing.

### 33.—MODEL FOR A PANIC—DETACHED STYLE.

Unexpected attack by the German cavalry.

Inopinantes nostri re nova perturbantur, ac vix primum impetum cohors in statione sustinet. circumfunduntur ex reliquis hostes partibus, si quem aditum reperire possent. aegre portas nostri tuentur; reliquos aditus locus ipse per se munitioque defendit. Totis trepidatur castris, atque alius ex alio causam tumultus quaerit; neque quo signa ferantur, neque quam in partem quisque conveniat provident. Alius castra iam capta pronuntiat, alius, deleto exercitu atque imperatore, victores barbaros venisse contendit; plerique novas sibi ex loco religiones fingunt Cottaque et Titurii calamitatem, qui in eodem occiderint castello, ante oculos ponunt.

## 34.—SAME PIECE TRANSLATED.

Not expecting any attack our men are thrown into confusion by the event and it is with great difficulty that the cohort on guard withstands the first assault. The enemy pour around from all sides, in the hope that they may be able to find some opening. With difficulty our men defend the gates. The other approaches are protected by the nature of the ground and the entrenchments. Panic reigns throughout the whole camp, and one asks of the other the cause of the disturbance; they do not foresee either where an advance should be made or in what section they should severally assemble. One gives out that the camp has been already captured, another that the army and commander have been destroyed, and that the enemy have come flushed with victory: the majority imagine new superstitious alarms suggested by the place, and picture before their eyes the disaster that befell Cotta and Titurius, who (they thought) met their death in the same fort.

## 35.—INCIDENTS OF A PANIC.

There was a sick man left with the garrison, Publius Sextius Baculus, of whom I have made mention<sup>1</sup> in previous battles, and who had been without<sup>2</sup> food for five days<sup>3</sup> already. This (man), despairing<sup>4</sup> of his own safety and that of all, advances unarmed from his tent;<sup>5</sup> he sees that the enemy are close at hand and that a crisis has come:<sup>6</sup> he takes arms from the nearest and stands<sup>7</sup> in the gate. The centurions of the<sup>8</sup> cohort which was on guard follow him; for a little while by their united efforts<sup>9</sup> they maintain the battle. Sextius faints<sup>10</sup> from the severe wounds he has received;<sup>11</sup> with difficulty he is passed from hand to hand<sup>12</sup> and is saved.

<sup>1</sup> *mentio, onis.* <sup>2</sup> *careo, 2, with Abl.* <sup>3</sup> *the fifth day.* <sup>4</sup> *diffisus.* <sup>5</sup> *tabernaculum.* <sup>6</sup> *immineo.* <sup>7</sup> *consisto.* <sup>8</sup> *Emphatic, is.* <sup>9</sup> *=together, una.* <sup>10</sup> *relinquit animus Sextium.* <sup>11</sup> *A.A.* <sup>12</sup> *per manus traho.*

## 36.—INCIDENTS OF A PANIC.

In the meantime, having finished foraging,<sup>1</sup> our soldiers hear the shouting. The cavalry run forward; they learn in how great danger matters stand.<sup>2</sup> Here moreover there is no entrenchment to which they may resort<sup>3</sup> in their panic: those (who were) lately enlisted and therefore unacquainted with the usages of war,<sup>4</sup> turn their eyes<sup>5</sup> towards (ad) the military tribune and the centurions; they wait to see what order<sup>6</sup> is given by them. No one is so brave as not<sup>7</sup> to be confused by the novelty of the occurrence. The barbarians, observing the standards in the distance, cease from the attack; at first they believe that the legions, which they had ascertained from captives had gone off farther, have returned; afterwards, holding the small number in contempt<sup>8</sup> they make an attack from all sides.

<sup>1</sup> *frumentatio, onis.* <sup>2</sup> *the thing is.* <sup>3</sup> *to receive them (recipio).* <sup>4</sup> *usus militaris.* <sup>5</sup> *faces, os, oris, neut.* <sup>6</sup> *praecipio.* <sup>7</sup> *quin.* <sup>8</sup> *despicio.*

## 37.—DETACHED STYLE IN ORATORY—RAPID SERIES OF QUESTIONS.

How often did you attempt to kill me (when) consul-elect,<sup>1</sup> how often (when I was) consul? How many of your thrusts<sup>2</sup> have I avoided? You do nothing, you attempt nothing, you plan nothing, which I do not discover in a short time. And yet you do not cease to attempt and to plan. How often already has that dagger of yours been wrested<sup>3</sup> from your hands? How often too by some accident has it fallen from and slipped from them? Nevertheless, you cannot longer be without it: Why, pray, is it that you think it necessary to plunge it<sup>4</sup> into the body of a consul?

<sup>1</sup> *designatus*. <sup>2</sup> *petitio, onis*. <sup>3</sup> *extorqueo*. <sup>2.</sup> *torsi, tortus*. <sup>4</sup> *defigere*.

## 38.—IMPASSIONED SPEECH.

You have therefore fed (*alo*) this fire with which you are now burning up (*ardeo*). Your armies are encamping around (*circumsedeo*) Saguntum, from which (whence) they are excluded (*arceo*) by treaty; soon the Roman legions will encamp around Carthage, under the leadership of the same gods, through whom they avenged the breaking of treaties in the former war. Are you ignorant of (*ignorare*) the enemy or yourselves or the condition (*fortuna*) of either people? Your fine (*bonus*) commander did not admit into his camp ambassadors coming from allies and on behalf of allies; he ignored (*tollo*) international law;<sup>1</sup> these men, nevertheless, driven (from an audience) from which (*unde*) not even the ambassadors of enemies are excluded (*arceo*), have come to you; they demand satisfaction in accordance with the treaty. Picture in your imagination the Aegates islands and Eryx, (recall) what you suffered by land and sea through four and twenty years. It is against Carthage that Hannibal is now moving his vineae and towers. It is the walls of Carthage that he is shaking (*quatio*) with his battering-ram. It is upon our heads that the ruins of Saguntum will fall, and the war begun (*suscipio*) with Saguntum must be waged with Rome. Shall we then surrender Hannibal? some one will say.

<sup>1</sup> the law of nations, *ius gentium*.

## 39.—IRONY AND REBUKE.

Duty, obligation, necessity.

At sunrise the enemy came up to the rampart; before the second hour, without ever trying the chances of a battle, they surrendered themselves and their arms. When it became them to stand in line and fight, then they fled (back) into their camp; when it was incumbent upon them to fight before the rampart, they surrendered the camp, (utterly) useless both in battle-line and in camp. And am I to ransom you? When it is your duty to burst forth from the camp, you hesitate and remain; when it is absolutely necessary to remain and defend the camp with arms, you surrender both camp and arms and yourselves to the enemy. I, Conscrip Fathers, no more think these fellows ought to be ransomed than that those who broke out of camp through the midst of the enemy and through the highest valor restored themselves to their country should be handed over to Hannibal.



## 40.

On his return from Europe to Asia, Darius being urged by his friends to bring Greece under his own sway, gathered a fleet of five hundred ships. He said that he wished particularly<sup>1</sup> to destroy the city of the Athenians, because at their instigation<sup>2</sup> and with their aid<sup>2</sup> the Ionians<sup>3</sup> had attacked Sardis<sup>4</sup> and put the garrison to the sword. Datis and Artaphernes, whom he had placed in command of the fleet, brought it to land<sup>5</sup> at Euboea, quickly took the city of Eretria, carried off<sup>6</sup> all the citizens, and<sup>7</sup> sent them to Asia to the king.

<sup>1</sup>potissimum. <sup>2</sup>A.A. <sup>3</sup>Iones. <sup>4</sup>Sardis, is or Sardes, ium. <sup>5</sup>appello, 3, pull, pulsus. <sup>6</sup>abripio. <sup>7</sup>See Idiom 48.

## 41.

When the Persians, after their destruction of Eretria, landed<sup>1</sup> their forces on the plains of Marathon, which is only ten miles from Athens, the Athenians were in a great panic.<sup>2</sup> They immediately sent the runner,<sup>3</sup> Phidippides, to Sparta to tell the Spartans how urgently<sup>4</sup> their help was needed. At home also they chose ten generals to take command of the army, among them Miltiades, who had already returned to Athens because he was afraid that Darius might put him to death if he got hold<sup>5</sup> of him. A great dispute<sup>6</sup> at once arose<sup>7</sup> among the generals, whether they should defend the city or go out to meet the enemy and settle<sup>8</sup> their fate<sup>9</sup> in the battle-field. Miltiades alone maintained that a camp should be formed at the very earliest<sup>10</sup> opportunity. For, said he, if that is done the citizens will be inspired<sup>11</sup> with more enthusiasm<sup>11</sup> when they see that we still have confidence<sup>12</sup> in their valor, and the enemy likewise will be slower (to fight) if they see that we have the courage<sup>13</sup> to engage them with so small forces.

<sup>1</sup>deduco. <sup>2</sup>great panic seized. <sup>3</sup>cursor. <sup>4</sup>how swift help there was need of. <sup>5</sup>apprehendo, 3, di, sus. <sup>6</sup>contentio. <sup>7</sup>was. <sup>8</sup>decerno. <sup>9</sup>res, or omit. <sup>10</sup>primo quoque tempore. <sup>11</sup>courage, animus, will come to, accedo. <sup>12</sup>that it is not despaired concerning. <sup>13</sup>have courage=dare.

## 42.

The Athenians, spurred<sup>1</sup> on by the influence<sup>2</sup> of Miltiades, led their forces out of the city and formed a camp on suitable ground, with both wings protected by mountains. There were in all ten thousand men, of whom one thousand were Plataeans,<sup>3</sup> whose city<sup>4</sup> was the only one which had sent aid to the Athenians. On the following day the line was drawn up at the base of the mountain in such a way that when they commenced the battle the cavalry of the enemy would not be able to surround them. Although Datis saw that the ground was not suitable for his forces, nevertheless, relying on their number, he was anxious<sup>5</sup> to engage, and all the more so<sup>6</sup> because he thought it was advantageous<sup>7</sup> to fight, before the Lacedaemonians came to the aid of the Athenians. The Athenians, however, were so<sup>9</sup> superior<sup>8</sup> in valor that they overthrew<sup>10</sup> an enemy ten times as numerous as themselves,<sup>11</sup> and so terrified them that the Persians fled,<sup>12</sup> not to their camp but to their ships.

This was a most famous battle, for nowhere else did so small a band overthrow<sup>13</sup> such large forces.

<sup>1</sup>*impello*. <sup>2</sup>*auctoritas*. <sup>3</sup>*Plataeenses*. <sup>4</sup>(city) state. <sup>5</sup>he desired, *cupio*. <sup>6</sup>*eoque magis*—and by this, for this reason, the more. <sup>7</sup>useful. <sup>8</sup>*plus valere*—be superior. <sup>9</sup>by so much. <sup>10</sup>*profligo*, 1. <sup>11</sup>ten times, *decemplex*, *ecis*, a number of enemies. <sup>12</sup>*peto*. <sup>13</sup>*prosterno*, 3, *stravi*, *stratus*.

## 43.

After the battle of Marathon,<sup>1</sup> the Athenians gave Miltiades a fleet of seventy ships for the purpose of punishing<sup>2</sup> the islands which had aided the barbarians. Some he forced to return to their allegiance,<sup>3</sup> and some he took by storm. Among the latter was<sup>4</sup> Paros. Being unable to win it back<sup>5</sup> by persuasion,<sup>6</sup> he closed the city round with siege-works<sup>7</sup> and cut it off<sup>8</sup> from all supplies. He was just on the point<sup>9</sup> of gaining possession of the town when a grove<sup>10</sup> on the mainland in the distance, which could be seen from the island, was set on fire by some accident or other<sup>11</sup> in the night time. Both besiegers<sup>12</sup> and besieged thought that the flames<sup>13</sup> were a signal given by the king's<sup>14</sup> fleet. The result was that<sup>15</sup> the Persians no longer thought<sup>16</sup> of surrendering, and Miltiades, fearing that the king's fleet was coming up, set fire to his siege-works and returned to Athens with the same number<sup>17</sup> of ships as he had set out with. He was accordingly accused of treachery on the ground that<sup>18</sup> when he might have taken Paros, he came away without accomplishing his purpose, through being bribed by the king. At the time he was ill with wounds which he had received during his attack on the town. Accordingly being unable to defend his case personally,<sup>19</sup> his brother, Tisagoras, spoke<sup>20</sup> for him. The trial<sup>21</sup> over,<sup>22</sup> he was acquitted of the capital charge, but was fined<sup>23</sup> fifty talents. Being unable to pay the money just at once,<sup>24</sup> he was put in prison and there died.<sup>25</sup>

<sup>1</sup>*pugna Marathonica*, page 158, 2. <sup>2</sup>*bello persequi*. <sup>3</sup>*officium*. <sup>4</sup>Eliminate. <sup>5</sup>*reconciliare*. <sup>6</sup>*oratio*. <sup>7</sup>*opus*. <sup>8</sup>*privo*, 1. <sup>9</sup>*in eo esse ut*. <sup>10</sup>Mark logical sequence. <sup>11</sup>*nescio quis casus*. <sup>12</sup>*oppugnator*, or pres. part. <sup>13</sup>Sing. <sup>14</sup>royal—*regius*. <sup>15</sup>163, last phrase. <sup>16</sup>were deterred (*deterreo*) from surrender, *deditio*. <sup>17</sup>*totidem*. <sup>18</sup>= because, V.O.O. <sup>19</sup>speak for himself. <sup>20</sup>*verba facere*. <sup>21</sup>*causa*. <sup>22</sup>*cognosco*. <sup>23</sup>*multco*, 1. <sup>24</sup>*in praesentia*. <sup>25</sup>*diem obire supremum*.

## 44.

Major Correo, who was in command of the sixth battalion stationed there, kindly invited me to share his quarters as soon as I arrived. On the following morning, while examining the surrounding country, we saw two mounted men coming towards the town at full gallop. Instantly we turned, and, hurrying back to the barracks, we were in time to meet the scouts and learn that reinforcements were needed at Lubao, a small town about five miles distant. Without delay the call to arms was sounded, the troops mustered, and within ten minutes a column of two hundred men were swinging along the road at a rapid pace.



## 45.

It appeared that a scouting party under Lieutenant Lugio had encountered a large force of insurgents intrenched on the road beyond Mardao, and that after charging the trench and driving the rebels out, they had been obliged to retire to their lines with seven wounded and one killed. Among the wounded was Captain Tosto, who though apparently not seriously hurt, died of his wounds a few days later. Knowing the weakness of the Spaniards, the insurgents were still in the neighborhood of the town, waiting, no doubt, to cut the little party off if they attempted to retreat with their wounded to Muagla.

## 46.

I have been unable to ascertain when or by whom this old castle was erected. That it was built long before the city was founded there can be no doubt. I saw only two other castles of this type on the island; one of them built a hundred years ago to protect the harbor from pirates; the other, much smaller but stronger, situated on the top of a high hill.

## 47.

The shouts of the combatants resounded over the water and were answered on the shores by the cheers or wailings of the spectators as their friends were victorious or vanquished. For a long time the battle was maintained with heroic courage and dubious result. At length, as the Athenian vessels began to yield and make towards the shore, a universal shriek of horror and despair arose from the Athenian army, whilst shouts of joy and victory were raised from the pursuing vessels and were echoed back from the Syracusans on land. As the Athenian vessels neared the shore, their crews leaped out and made for the camp, whilst the boldest of the land army rushed forward to protect the ships from being seized by the enemy.

## 48.—PERIODIC STRUCTURE—EXERCISE ON PARTICIPLES.

Meanwhile there was manifold<sup>1</sup> (cause of) alarm<sup>1</sup> before<sup>c. 2</sup> Veii, now that three wars had united<sup>3</sup> into one. For just<sup>4</sup> as before, the men of Capena<sup>5</sup> and Falerii<sup>5</sup> suddenly came up to the rescue, and there raged a twofold struggle<sup>6</sup> against the three armies around<sup>7</sup> the defences. Accordingly,<sup>c.</sup> troops were quickly brought round from the larger camp and fell upon<sup>8</sup> the rear of the men of Capena, whose attention<sup>9</sup> was directed<sup>9</sup> to the Roman rampart. The engagement which<sup>c.</sup> ensued<sup>10</sup> struck<sup>11</sup> terror into the Falisci as well, and (whilst they were) wavering a well timed<sup>12</sup> sally from the camp put them to flight. The victors now followed up their foiled<sup>c. 13</sup> (assailants) and did<sup>14</sup> terrible<sup>15</sup> execution,<sup>16</sup> while<sup>c. 17</sup> shortly afterwards a band<sup>18</sup> who were raiding<sup>18</sup> the lands of Capena, fell in<sup>19</sup> with the scattered<sup>c.</sup> (survivors of the fray) by a sort<sup>20</sup> of accident and cut them off.<sup>21</sup> Many of the Veientes<sup>c.</sup> too<sup>c.</sup> were slain before the gates as they fled back to the city, since the

townsmen closed the gates and so shut out<sup>22</sup> the hindmost of their own side for fear of the Romans breaking in along with them.

<sup>1</sup>**multiplex terror.** c. = connective word. <sup>2</sup>**ad.** <sup>3</sup>**confero.** <sup>4</sup>in the same manner as before. <sup>5</sup>**Capenates; Falisci.** <sup>6</sup>it was fought in a twofold (**anceps**) battle. <sup>7</sup>**circa.** <sup>8</sup>attacked on the rear. <sup>9</sup>Eliminate attention, **versus in.** <sup>10</sup>Thence the fight begun. <sup>11</sup>**inferre terrorem.** <sup>12</sup>opportunistically made. <sup>13</sup>(those)repulsed. <sup>14</sup>**edo.** <sup>15</sup>**ingens.** <sup>16</sup>slaughter. <sup>17</sup>and not (**nec**) so long (**multo**) afterwards. <sup>18</sup>raiders (**populatores**) of the land of Capena (**Capenas, atis** Adj.). <sup>19</sup>Middle of **offero.** <sup>20</sup>as if by chance. <sup>21</sup>**absumo.** <sup>22</sup>**excludo.**

#### 49.—A RESCUE.

Suddenly we heard a shout in our rear and on looking round saw the small band, who had been left to guard the baggage train, surrounded on all sides by the enemy. It was evident to all that, unless succor came to them immediately, all must necessarily be killed or taken prisoner. On perceiving this, our leader, accounting it a foul disgrace to abandon friends in order to save his own life, put spurs to his horse and, bidding us follow, charged with such force into the enemy that a large part of them at once threw away their arms and began to flee in all directions. Then seeing their leader in the distance trying to rally his men, he charged straight at him and with one stroke of his sword brought both horse and rider to the ground. On his fall the enemy scattered so that we were once more victorious, and had not night interrupted the battle, we should have continued the pursuit and slaughter. On the following day messengers came from the enemy and throwing themselves at our leader's feet suppliantly begged him to make peace with them.

#### 50.

Antiochus was displaying to Hannibal in a plain the vast forces which he had assembled, preparatory to making war on the Roman people, and was manoeuvring (**converto**) his army glittering with silver and gold badges<sup>1</sup>; he exhibited also his chariots and elephants and cavalry shining (**fulgeo**) with all manner of ornaments. Thereupon the king looks up (**aspicio**) at Hannibal and says, "Do you think all these are enough for the Romans?" Then the Carthaginian, jeering (**eludo**) at the cowardice of his soldiers so extravagantly (**pretiose**) armed (replies), "Enough, quite (**plane**) enough, I believe all these are for the Romans, even though they are very greedy (**avarus**)."

<sup>1</sup>**insigne,** is, N.

#### 51.

The Athenians wished to send colonists<sup>1</sup> to the Chersonese;<sup>2</sup> accordingly, they sent chosen<sup>3</sup> men to Delphi to consult Apollo as to whom they should employ as leader. For at that time the Thracians<sup>4</sup> held the Chersonese and the colonists would have to fight with them. Apollo gave instructions<sup>5</sup> to those<sup>6</sup> who<sup>6</sup> consulted him that they should take<sup>7</sup> Miltiades as their leader. If they did so<sup>6</sup>, he said, their

undertaking<sup>8</sup> would be successful.<sup>9</sup> When the Athenians heard this<sup>10</sup> they were glad; for all the people had great confidence<sup>10</sup> in Miltiades.

<sup>1</sup>colonus. <sup>2</sup>Chersonesus. <sup>3</sup>delectus. <sup>4</sup>Thrax, cis. <sup>5</sup>praecipio. <sup>6</sup>to those consulting. <sup>7</sup>sumo. <sup>8</sup>inceptum. <sup>9</sup>prosper. <sup>10</sup>trusted much. c. connective.

## 52.

In accordance with<sup>1</sup> the reply of the oracle Miltiades in company with a select band set out with a fleet to Chersonese. On coming<sup>2</sup> to Lemnos<sup>3</sup> he wished to reduce<sup>4</sup> the inhabitants of that island under the sway<sup>4</sup> of the Athenians. When he demanded that the Lesbians should do this of their own accord, they in ridicule<sup>5</sup> replied that they would do so when he set out from home by sea<sup>6</sup> and came to Lemnos by a north wind.<sup>7</sup> This wind, of course, coming<sup>8</sup> from the north blows right in the face of<sup>9</sup> Athenians when<sup>10</sup> they start out on this trip. Not having time to delay<sup>11</sup> at that time, Miltiades held<sup>12</sup> on his intended<sup>12</sup> course and reached the Chersonese in safety.

<sup>1</sup>ex. <sup>2</sup>accedo. <sup>3</sup>Lemnus, a small island. <sup>4</sup>redigere sub potestatem or imperium. <sup>5</sup>irrideo. <sup>6</sup>(in) ships. <sup>7</sup>ventus aquilo, onis or boreas, ae. <sup>8</sup>rising from. <sup>9</sup>adversum tenere with Dat. of interest. <sup>10</sup>starting out. <sup>11</sup>time of delaying. <sup>12</sup>directed his course (cursum dirigere) whither he was proceeding (tendo).

## 53.

There in a short time he scattered<sup>1</sup> the forces of the barbarians, gained possession of all the district he desired<sup>2</sup>, fortified places suitable for forts<sup>3</sup> and settled<sup>4</sup> the people whom he had brought with him. After staying in this land a few months he was so well pleased with it that he decided to stay there himself. Not long afterwards he returned to Lemnos and demanded in accordance with the agreement<sup>5</sup> that they hand over the city to him. For they had said that when he set out for home with a north wind and came there they would surrender it to him; "and I," said he, "have my home<sup>6</sup> now in Chersonese." The Carians who inhabited<sup>7</sup> Lemnos at that time, although the matter had turned out contrary to their expectation<sup>8</sup>, nevertheless did not dare to resist and left the island. Thus he brought the island under the sway of the Athenians.

<sup>1</sup>disicio. <sup>2</sup>peto. <sup>3</sup>castellum, l. <sup>4</sup>collocare. <sup>5</sup>pactum, i. <sup>6</sup>domum habere. <sup>7</sup>incolo. <sup>8</sup>praeter opinionem cadere, or see 132.

## 54.

About the same time Darius, King of Persia, brought over a large army from Asia into Europe and determined to begin war on the Scythians. He had a bridge built over the Danube by which to take over his forces. Those, whom he left to guard the bridge while he himself was absent, were mostly Greeks and among the number was Miltiades himself. Soon numerous<sup>1</sup> reports came<sup>2</sup> that Darius was unsuccessful<sup>3</sup> and was hard pressed by the Scythians. Thereupon Miltiades urged the guards of the bridge not to let slip<sup>4</sup> the opportunity

which had been granted them by Fortune of liberating Greece. "For" (said he) "if Darius perishes<sup>5</sup> with the force which he has brought over with him, not only will Europe be safe, but those Greeks also, who live in<sup>6</sup> Asia, will be free from the domination<sup>7</sup> of the Persians; now this can easily be done, for if<sup>8</sup> the bridge be broken down<sup>9</sup> the king will perish either by the sword of his enemies or from want of supplies<sup>10</sup> in a few days."

<sup>1</sup> creber. <sup>2</sup> were brought, afferro. <sup>3</sup> male rem gerere. <sup>4</sup> dimitto. <sup>5</sup> Tense? <sup>6</sup> inhabit, incolo. <sup>7</sup> dominatio, onis. <sup>8</sup> A. A. <sup>9</sup> rescindo, 3, scidi, scissus. <sup>10</sup> want of supplies, inopia.

#### 55.—CAMILLUS' SPEECH AGAINST THE REMOVAL TO VEII.

Go not down into the Forum when the day for putting the motion<sup>1</sup> shall have come, save<sup>2</sup> as men who bear<sup>3</sup> in mind that they will have to fight for their altars and hearths, for the temples of the gods, and for their native<sup>4</sup> soil. As far as concerns<sup>5</sup> myself personally, if it is right<sup>6</sup> amidst<sup>7</sup> my country's struggles to give a thought<sup>8</sup> to my own glory, it is actually<sup>8</sup> a compliment<sup>9</sup> to myself, for a city to be peopled<sup>10</sup> that I have captured; for me to enjoy daily what recalls<sup>11</sup> my glory; for me to have before my eyes a city that was borne<sup>12</sup> in my triumph;<sup>12</sup> for all men to tread<sup>13</sup> in the traces<sup>14</sup> of my achievements;<sup>15</sup> but I hold<sup>16</sup> it is a sin<sup>17</sup> that a city should be inhabited<sup>18</sup> after it has been abandoned and deserted by the immortal gods, and that the people of Rome should dwell<sup>19</sup> on a soil enslaved,<sup>20</sup> and exchange a conquered country for that which conquered<sup>21</sup> it.

<sup>1</sup>ferre legem. <sup>2</sup>not otherwise . . . than as (ut) who. <sup>3</sup>memini. <sup>4</sup>soil (solum) on which they were born. <sup>5</sup>Vocab. Ex. 11. <sup>6</sup>fas. <sup>7</sup>inter dimicationem. <sup>8</sup>quoque. <sup>9</sup>amplius. <sup>10</sup>frequento. <sup>11</sup>a reminder (monumentum) of. <sup>12</sup>Literally fero, triumphus. <sup>13</sup>insisto, with Dat. <sup>14</sup>vestigia. <sup>15</sup>laudes. <sup>16</sup>duco. <sup>17</sup>nefas. <sup>18</sup>incolo. <sup>19</sup>habito, 1. <sup>20</sup>captivus. <sup>21</sup>victrix.

#### 56.

When we had made every preparation for our departure we hastened to the castle by forced marches. On our arrival there about midnight we purposely allowed the slaves to get off unmolested, in order that we might capture the garrison and all its belongings. Being unable to take the castle by assault, for it was high and large, and defended by a rampart as well as a strong garrison, we at once began to bring up the battering-ram. But the garrison sent out such a shower of arrows as to make it impossible for anyone to approach with safety. At the same time, in consequence of their yells and alarm-fires, many troops came from the neighboring villages to their rescue, so that we thought it was time for us to beat a retreat. We saw that if we waited until more of the enemy's forces arrived there was a danger lest our retreat might develop into a flight, and if we were once surrounded in the hills not a man could possibly escape.



## 57.—A CLEVER BOY.

It was formerly the custom of (to) the senators at Rome to enter the senate-house with their young sons. It happened (*forte*) that some question of considerable (*maior*) importance was discussed (*consulto*) and postponed (*profero*) to the following day, and it was agreed (*placuit*) that none should divulge (*enuntio*) the (*is*) matter before it had been decided. But the mother of the boy Papirius, who had been with his father in the senate-house, asked her son what the senators had discussed (*ago*) in the senate. The boy replied that he must keep quiet (*taceo*), and that it might not be divulged. The woman, however, becomes more desirous of hearing (what it is), and at length the boy, owing to the mother's solicitations (*urgeo*), bethought (*consilium capit*) himself of an amusing (*lepidus*) falsehood (*mendacium*). He said that the question under discussion in the senate was whether in their opinion it was more useful, and in the interests of the republic, that one man should have two wives or that one woman should be married (*nupta*, with *Dat.*) to two men.

## 58.

On hearing this she leaves home in alarm (and) proceeds to the other women. A crowd of mothers of families on the following day comes to the senate. With tears and entreaties they pray that one woman should be wedded to two men rather than two women to one man. The senators on entering the chamber wondered what the madness of the women and what that demand of theirs meant. The boy Papirius advancing into the centre of the chamber narrates what his mother had insisted upon hearing (and) what he had told his mother. The senate commends the confidence and genius of the boy and passes a decree that hereafter boys should not enter the senate-house along with their fathers except that Papirius alone to whom the cognomen "*Praetextatus*" was afterwards given as a mark of honor.

## 59.—INFLUENCE OF SCIPIO.

M. Naevius tribune of the people accused Scipio before (*ad*) the people and said that he had received money from King Antiochus, that peace might be made with him in the name of the Roman people on easy (*mollis*) terms, and at the same time he added certain other things reflecting discredit<sup>1</sup> on such a man. Thereupon Scipio giving utterance (*praefero*, 1) first to a few (remarks) which the dignity and glory of his life demanded, exclaims (*inquit*) "I recall<sup>2</sup> (in my memory), fellow-citizens, that this is the day on which I conquered Hannibal the Carthaginian a most bitter enemy of your empire in a great battle on African soil (*terra*) and won for you peace and a glorious victory. Let us not therefore be ungrateful to (*adversum*) the gods and I move (propose) (*censeo*) that we leave this good-for-nothing<sup>3</sup> here and go hence forthwith to offer thanks to<sup>4</sup> Jupiter Optimus Maximus." After saying this he turns about and proceeds to go to the Capitol. Thereupon the whole assembly (*contio*) which had assembled to pass sentence on<sup>5</sup> Scipio, left

the tribune, accompanied Scipio to the Capitol, and thence escorted him to his house with joy and solemn<sup>6</sup> congratulations.

<sup>1</sup>unworthy of. <sup>2</sup>memoria repeto. <sup>3</sup>nebulo, onis. <sup>4</sup>gratulor 1, with Dat. <sup>5</sup>sententiam ferre de. <sup>6</sup>sollemnis gratulatio, onis: sing.

#### 60.—A DIFFICULT POSITION.

I and two others were trying a friend on a capital charge. The law was such that it was absolutely necessary<sup>2</sup> for the man to be condemned. Either therefore my friend had to lose<sup>3</sup> his civic rights or deception had to be practised<sup>4</sup> on the law. I deliberated long in my mind how to save my friend without violating the law; at length this course which I carried out<sup>5</sup> seemed the best. I gave my vote<sup>6</sup> in silence for condemning the man (but) I persuaded my fellow judges to acquit him. Thus I performed my duty both as a judge and as a friend in an important<sup>7</sup> case.

<sup>1</sup>I along with two others was a judge concerning the civic rights (*caput*) of a friend. <sup>2</sup>absolutely necessary = *necesse*. <sup>3</sup>perdo. <sup>4</sup>fraudem adhibere. <sup>5</sup>=did. <sup>6</sup>sententiam ferre. <sup>7</sup>=so great.

#### 61.—VALERIUS AND THE GAUL.

Large forces of Gauls had encamped in the Pomptine district<sup>1</sup> and the lines were being drawn up by the consuls. Meanwhile a leader of the Gauls (a man) of enormous<sup>2</sup> stature, with armour gleaming with gold, was marching<sup>3</sup> along poisoning<sup>4</sup> his weapon on his hand, and, haughtily looking round on everything, orders<sup>5</sup> anyone out of the whole Roman army who dared, to come out and engage with him. Thereupon Valerius a young man already a military tribune, when every one else hesitated through fear, obtains permission<sup>6</sup> from the consuls to fight against the Gaul and advances undismayed to meet him. And while there the two are fighting a raven<sup>7</sup> suddenly flies<sup>8</sup> down and attacks<sup>9</sup> the eyes and hands of the Gaul with its talons<sup>10</sup>. Thus the tribune in sight of both armies,<sup>11</sup> relying on his own valor and aided by the services<sup>12</sup> of the bird overcame and killed the fierce<sup>13</sup> leader of the enemy and for this reason received<sup>14</sup> the cognomen Corvinus.

<sup>1</sup>ager. <sup>2</sup>vasta proceritas. <sup>3</sup>incedo...used of a stately gait. <sup>4</sup>vibro, 1. <sup>5</sup>bids (him) come if any one dared. <sup>6</sup>obtains his request, that they permit him. <sup>7</sup>corvus. <sup>8</sup>advolo, 1. <sup>9</sup>lanio, 1. <sup>10</sup>unquis, is. <sup>11</sup>Use A.A., *specto*=look on; both=*uterque* in sing. <sup>12</sup>opera, ae. <sup>13</sup>Use superlative of *ferox*. <sup>14</sup>habeo.

#### 62.—PYRRHUS.

When he had walked over the battle-field and had viewed the Roman dead with wounds all in front, Pyrrhus felt that it would be well nigh impossible to conquer men who fought so well. He therefore resolved to send the eloquent Cineas to Rome to offer peace. This great orator appeared before the senate and spoke skilfully for his master; but the blind old Censor, Appius Claudius, being led down to the house, convinced the wavering fathers that there was only one condition on which Rome could treat, and that was the immediate departure of Pyrrhus from Italy.



## 63.—IDIOMATIC.

The leader of the enemy, accordingly, when darkness had set in, sent some men to the city wall, who, pretending to come from their friends in Syracuse, warned them not to decamp that night as all the roads were beset by the Syracusans.

## 64.—REVERSE AT NOLA.

Neither his words of encouragement nor reproach availed to strengthen their hearts. When they were being routed in every quarter and the spirits of the Romans were rising, not only owing to the exhortations of their leader but also because the Nolan party was inflaming their ardor for battle, the Carthaginians turned their backs and were driven into the camp. Though the Roman soldiers were anxious to attack this, Marcellus led them back to Nola amid the great joy and congratulations even of the common people who had before been more inclined towards the Carthaginians. Of the enemy more than 5,000 were slain on that day; of the Romans less than a thousand were killed. They spent the following day in burying the slain on both sides in the engagement.

## 65.—NARRATIVE.

While these events are occurring in Spain, Petelia, in (the country of) the Brutii, was taken by Himilco, an officer of Hannibal, several months after it began to be attacked. That victory cost the Carthaginians much blood and wounds, and (it was) no power more than famine (that) captured the besieged. For, after consuming all the grain, they lived at last upon roots and leaves, and they were not taken until they lacked the strength to stand on the walls and bear arms. After the capture of Petelia, the Carthaginian leads his forces across towards Consentia, which, being defended with less stubbornness, he received on surrender in a few days. Almost within the same day, also, an army of the Brutii encamped around (*circumsedeo* with Acc.) Croton, a Greek city, at one time (*quondam*) a strong military power, but at this time (*tum jam*) so crushed (*affligo*) by numerous great disasters that less than two thousand citizens of every age survived. Accordingly, the enemy easily got possession of the city destitute of defenders.

## 66.—ROMAN HONOR.

When King Pyrrhus was in the land of Italy and had fought one or<sup>1</sup> two successful battles, and the most of Italy had revolted<sup>2</sup> to him, one<sup>3</sup> Timochares, an Ambraciot,<sup>4</sup> a friend of King Pyrrhus, came secretly<sup>5</sup> to the consul C. Fabricius, and promised, on receipt<sup>6</sup> of a reward, to kill<sup>7</sup> the king by poison. He said it could easily<sup>8</sup> be done, since his son served<sup>9</sup> the cups for the king at the banquet.<sup>10</sup> Fabricius reported<sup>11</sup> the matter to the Senate. The Senate sent ambassadors to the king and gave them instructions<sup>12</sup> not to divulge<sup>13</sup> anything about Timochares, but to warn the king to act<sup>14</sup> somewhat<sup>15</sup> cautiously and be on his guard against<sup>16</sup> the plots of his nearest (friends). Wherefore it is said that

Pyrrhus wrote to the Roman people, praising and thanking<sup>17</sup> them, and clothed and restored all the captives which he then had.

<sup>1</sup>one and two, **alter**. <sup>2</sup>**descisco**, 3, **scivi**. <sup>3</sup>**quidam**. <sup>4</sup>**Ambraciensis**. <sup>5</sup>**furtim**.  
<sup>6</sup>Use A.A. or a **si** clause. <sup>7</sup>**neco**, 1=murder. <sup>8</sup>Literally, or, easy to do. <sup>9</sup>**pocula ministrare**. <sup>10</sup>**convivium**. <sup>11</sup>=wrote. <sup>12</sup>**mando**, 1. <sup>13</sup>**prodo**. <sup>14</sup>**ago**. <sup>15</sup>=Comparative of **caute**. <sup>16</sup>protect (**tutor**, 1) his safety from. <sup>17</sup>wrote praises and thanks to.

#### 67.—A PLOT.

When the sons of Ancus saw that Servius Tullius was likely to succeed Tarquinius, they sent two peasants, who came before the king under the pretence of having a dispute to decide; and while Tarquin was listening to the one who stated his case, the other struck him down with an axe. The queen, however, gave out that the king was not dead, and by the time that the truth became known, the cause of Servius was secure and he became king of Rome.

#### 68.—PLACE.

Caesar was delaying at Ravenna with one legion. Leaving Ravenna at night, he reached Ariminum at dawn. Antony, who had fled from Rome on the night after Caesar was outlawed, joined him at Ariminum (**Rimini**). Soon Pompey had gone to Brundisium for the purpose of crossing to Greece. Before Caesar's arrival there, the consuls had sailed for Dyrrhachium in Epirus. On the 5th of November Caesar crossed from Brundisium to the shore of Epirus with a part of his army.

#### 69.—CONDITIONAL.

1. Had the Athenians taken their departure that night, nobody would have opposed them.
2. The enemy have proved their bravery. If they had only been as enlightened as they are valorous, there would never have been any occasion for this war.
3. Now, if Catiline had remained in the city till this day, although as long as he was (in the city) I met and blocked all his plans, nevertheless, to put it mildly, we should have had to fight with him, and never would we, while he was in the city as an enemy, have freed the state from so great perils, with so great peace, so great ease, so great silence.
4. For I ask (this question), if any father of a family failed to inflict the severest possible punishment upon a slave by whom his children had been killed, his wife slain and his home burned, would he appear to be gentle and pitiful or most inhuman and cruel.
5. If, Catiline, I at once order you to be arrested and put to death I shall have to fear lest some one may say I have acted with too great cruelty.
6. In heaven's name, if my slaves hated me to the same extent that all your fellow-citizens fear you, I should think I ought to

abandon my home: do you not think you should abandon the city? and if I saw myself so strongly suspected by my fellow-citizens, I should prefer to go into exile at once.

7. Would that we had been able to converse with each other, Servius. Assuredly we would have brought (**affero**) some aid (Part. Gen.) to the falling (**occidens**) republic.
8. Nevertheless, if you had at once determined to live in exile, you ought to have reflected (**cogitare**) (this), that wherever you were, you would be in the power of the very man from whom you were fleeing. Now even if he (**qui si**) were going to allow you to live in peace and freedom (quietly and freely), bereft (**carens**) of your native land and your possessions (**fortuna**), still you would have had to consider whether you preferred to live at Rome and at your home or at Mytilene (**Mytilenae**) or Rhodes (**Rhodus**)
9. But since the power (**potestas**) of the man whom we fear would extend (**pateo**) so widely as to embrace (**complector**) the whole earth, would you not prefer to be at your own home without danger than at (the home) of another with danger? For my part, even if death had to be met (**oppeto**), I should have preferred to live at home and in my native land rather than in a foreign (**externus**) and strange (**alienus**) country (**locus**).
10. But if, on the other hand, it seems to a prudent man like you to be useful for us to converse, although I was even thinking of going farther away from the city, still I shall come nearer, and I gave instructions to (**mando**) Trebatius not to refuse whatever (**si quid**) you might wish him to send to me, and I should like you to do so. Send to me any (**si quis**) of your faithful friends you wish (fut.) in order that it may not be necessary for you to leave the city or for me to approach.
11. If you ask me what is right, it is plain: if (you ask) what is most expedient, it is not so clear (**obscurus**), but if we are the men we assuredly ought to be, so that we consider nothing to be expedient except (**nisi**) what is right and honorable, there cannot be a doubt (as to) what we ought to do.

#### 70.—O. R. AND O. O.

1. Upon arriving in the city, Gylippus sent a message to the Athenians allowing them a five days' truce to collect their effects and evacuate the island.
2. Ariaeus answered that he intended immediately to retreat; and that if the Greeks wished to accompany him, they must join him during the following night.
3. "Tell your king," said Clearchus to the envoys, "that we must first fight; for we have had no breakfast, nor will any man presume to talk to the Greeks about a truce, without first providing for them a breakfast."
4. Clearchus replied that they had not come thither with any design to attack the king, but had been enticed forward by Cyrus under

false pretences; that their only desire at present was to return home; but that if any obstacle was offered they were prepared to repel hostilities. In a few days Tissaphernes returned and stated that he had with great difficulty obtained permission to save the Greek army; that he was ready to conduct them in person into Greece and to supply them with provisions, for which, however, they were to pay; but if he failed to supply them, then they were to be at liberty to help themselves.

5. When the ambassador returned on the third day, the king put to him the simple question how far it was from the sea to Susa. The ambassador answered that it was a journey of three months. "Milesian stranger," exclaimed the king, "quit Sparta before sunset; you are no friend to the Spartans if you want them to undertake a three months' journey from the sea."

#### 71.—*Oratio Obliqua*.—HISTORIC SEQUENCE.

Being unable to defend themselves and their (property) against (ab) the enemy the Aedui send ambassadors to Caesar to seek aid; they had deserved so well (ita), (they said), of the Romans in<sup>1</sup> all time that their lands ought not to be devastated, their children carried off into slavery, (and) their towns taken by storm almost in sight of the Roman army. Influenced by these considerations (res) Caesar determined he ought not to wait until all the possessions (fortunae) of the allies were taken from them (consumo) and the Helvetii reached the territory of the Santoni.

<sup>1</sup>Abl. alone.

#### 72.—O.O.

Divico, the leader of the embassy, treats (ago) with Caesar in these words (ita): If the Roman people would make peace with the Helvetii, they would go into and remain in whatever district<sup>1</sup> Caesar determined<sup>2</sup> upon (constituo) and wished them to be; but if he continued (perseverare) to assail (persequi) them in war, let him remember both the old disaster that befell<sup>3</sup> the Roman people and the old-time valor of the Helvetii. As to<sup>4</sup> his having attacked one canton unexpectedly, when those who had crossed the river were unable to bring aid to their friends, let him not on that account despise them; they had been so taught by their fathers and ancestors that they relied (nitor) more on valor than on guile and treachery.

<sup>1</sup>They would go into that part and there remain, wherever. <sup>2</sup>Fut. Pf. in O.R.

<sup>3</sup>Expressed by Obj. Gen. <sup>4</sup>quod with Indic. in O.R.

#### 73.—O.O.

When Caesar sent messengers to them to demand that they surrender to him those who had made war on himself and Gaul, they replied that the empire of the Roman people did not extend across the Rhine; if he did not consider it fair (aequus) for Germans to cross into Gaul, why (they asked) did he cross over the Rhine into their territory?

## 74.—O. R.

When those present were panic-stricken at the news of this disaster and expressed the opinion (*censeo*) that a council ought to be called in regard to it, young Scipio, the destined (*fatalis*) leader of this war, says, "We must dare and do, not deliberate in such a crisis as this. Let those who wish the country safe (*salvus*) go with me forthwith in arms; no camp more truly belongs to the enemy than (that in which) (= where) such plans are devised (*cogitare*)."

## 75.—O. O.

When this was reported to Hannibal, he sent deputies to their chiefs (to say) that he wished to converse with them in person; either they should approach nearer Iliberim, or he would advance to Ruscino in order that their meeting could be more easily brought about; (for) he would both gladly (*laetus*) receive them into his camp and he himself would come to them without delay; for he had come as a friend (*hospes*), not as an enemy to Gaul, and he would not (*nec*) draw the sword, if the Gauls were agreeable (*per Gallos licet*), until he came into Italy.

## 76.—SPEECH OF HANNO.

I know that my influence amounts to little (*est levis*) in this matter; but I both rejoiced that Hamilcar perished, because if he were alive we should now have a war with Rome, and I hate and detest (*detestari*) this youth Hannibal; I think he ought not only to be handed over to the Romans, but even if no one should demand it he ought to be deported (*deveho*) to the farthest shores of sea and land; he ought to be banished (*ablegare*) to a spot (*eo*) from which his name could never again reach us.

## 77.—IDIOMS.

1. Hippias of Elis (*Eleus*, adj.), on coming to Olympia, boasted, in the hearing of almost all Greece, that there was nothing in any art that he himself did not know.
2. Your brother happened to be absent in the country on that day; he hoped to be able to return before the first of the month.
3. The distinguished Cato swore that he would never do anything unworthy of a Roman citizen.
4. We have been informed, said they, by certain friendly natives, that you have long been supplying the enemy with arms.
5. I hope the poor citizens will be spared, and the leaders forgiven.
6. The dictator swore that if no one followed him he would die for his country alone.
7. To-morrow we are to set out to our friends at Marseilles; be sure and join us if you can.
8. What was I to do in such a crisis? Whom was I to send to your aid? It seemed that all the best men despaired of the city's safety.
9. The river was so deep that the army could not cross without great danger.



## 78.—IDIOMS.

1. He was unanimously acquitted, but at the same time universally condemned.
2. I asked the old man whether he had lived all his life at Gades.
3. I cannot help asking you the reason of your absence from the assembly on that day.
4. We advised the young men to be mindful of the shortness of life.
5. Who is there that does not admire the old generals of Rome?
6. There is no doubt that he has injured the nation very much ; whether he has done this accidentally or designedly is an open question.
7. He will do nothing, I think, at thy bidding.
8. Seneca wrote the following to a friend : " Before old age (came upon me) I took care that I should live well ; in old age I take care that I may die well."
9. It was all through you that I did not return in time.
10. They asked when the work would be finished.
11. We advised him what he ought to do. Tell me if your brother is well.
12. If Alexander, who conquered so many nations in war, had also conquered the desires of his heart, he would undoubtedly have lived longer and with greater glory.
13. The world is still deceived by ornament. Move these eyes?

## 79.—IDIOMS.

1. Too late comes rescue ; he is ta'en or slain.  
For fly he could not, if he would have fled,  
And fly would Talbot never, though he might.
2. The day is ours. Let us see what friends are living, who are dead.
3. The task, it was manifest, must be undertaken.
4. Four years later he died in old age, just after returning from Scotland (*Scotia*).
5. The return of the conspirators to the city was soon followed by their capture.
6. Before three years had passed he died of a wound received in battle with a squadron of Persian Horse.
7. After a seige of six weeks Sidon had fallen.
8. The heralds announced to the chief that unless he surrendered at once our forces would attack the city and spare none.
9. The barbarians asked the forgiveness of Caesar for the attack made upon the outpost during the truce.
10. In the morning the conquerors learned that the rebel leader had fled with many followers.
11. The authors of the conspiracy alone urged continued resistance.



12. When the rest of his army at last arrived in the camp, he saw at once that the conquest of the rest of the country before winter was impossible, and made up his mind to return to Sicily until the spring.
13. As soon as the news of the acquittal of this villain was brought to him he hurried to the city to consult with his friends.

## 80.—DUMNORIX.

Having at length obtained suitable weather he orders the soldiers and horse to go on board the ships. But while the minds of all were engaged (**impeditus**) Dumnorix began to go off home from the camp with the cavalry of the Aedui without the knowledge of Caesar. When this fact was reported, Caesar postponed (**postpono**) everything and sent a large part of the cavalry to pursue him and orders him to be brought back ; if he offers violence and does not obey he orders him to be killed, thinking that this man would do nothing like a sane man in his absence, inasmuch as he had disregarded his order while present. Dumnorix (**ille**) of course (**enim**) on being called back began to resist, often shouting (**clamitare**) he was a free man and of a free state.

## 81.

On perceiving this, Ambiorix orders a proclamation to be made, that they should hurl their javelins from a distance and not (**neu**) approach too near, and, whenever<sup>1</sup> the Romans made an attack in any<sup>1</sup> direction, they should fall back (**cedo**) : owing to the lightness (**levitas**) of their arms and daily practice (**exercitatio**), (he said) no harm could be done to them ; when (the enemy) were retiring to their standards they were to make at them again (**insequor**).

<sup>1</sup>=into whatever part.

## 82.—WRITE THE O.O. IN O.R.

1. Dixit se postero die reditum esse.
2. Si ita fecissent, fines eorum se violaturum negavit.
3. Legatus Caesari dicit nisi auxilia ad se mittantur, sese diutius sustinere non posse.

## 83.—IDIOMATIC CONDITIONAL.

1. They maintained that if the army were safe (A.A.) the Germans would not have attacked the camp.
2. What would you do if it should be necessary to die for your country? (Express by the gerundive.)
3. If so many examples (**exemplum**) of valor do not move you, nothing will ever move you.
4. Everybody then thought that the rest of the summer would be spent in peace (**quietus**), and it would have been as far as a

Carthaginian enemy was concerned (as far as was concerned = per).

5. Let him be ashamed if he gave nothing.
6. Let them do this if they wish (fut.) to be safe.
7. He sent him on ahead in the hope that he might be able to achieve (**proficio**) something by the quickness of his march.
8. The enemy pour around (**circumfundor**) on all sides in the hope that they might be able to find some opening (**aditus, ūs**).

## 84.

Put in O.O. after **dixit**.

What am I to do? Whither to turn? Do you bid me go to meet the enemy? I would do so most willingly if it could be done without ruin to the nation. But what could be more foolish? What could be more fatal than with an army of recruits to engage in conflict with a veteran army?

## 85.

1. Thereupon the messenger, seeing that it was impossible to persuade the rebels not to advance upon the capital, strove to accomplish his object by threats and appeals to fear.
2. The forces which are gathering are too numerous to be counted.
3. These soldiers are too brave and too experienced to be defeated by such an undisciplined host as is coming to meet them.
4. Who is there in the whole world so unmindful of a kindness as not to be grieved by the action of these men, who, in order to gain the highest offices for themselves, have proved false to their greatest friends and have joined the greatest enemies of their country?

## 86.—TRANSLATE THE THOUGHT.

1. A march of sixteen days brought Caesar to the Rhine.
2. They recommenced hostilities at once after the return of the envoys.
3. The custody of the hostages was entrusted to the Remi.
4. The arrival of Caesar filled the soldiers with the greatest joy.
5. Such a glorious victory had not been gained, so thought the Athenians, without the special intervention of the gods.
6. The rout now became general along the whole Persian line.
7. As soon as the news of the fall of Eretria reached Athens the courier Phidippides was sent to Sparta to solicit assistance.
8. They abandoned the baggage-train and beat a quick retreat into the woods.
9. All recognized the fact that the non-acceptance of the terms offered meant the prolongation of the war.

10. Accordingly the number of the wounded and slain was in proportion to the length and fierceness of the battle.
11. The result of the engagement was quite a surprise to those who knew the fighting qualities of the two armies.
12. It was not to preserve what they had, but to get what they had not, that they went to war.
13. It goes without saying that even the wisest men sometimes act foolishly.
14. All of us, young and old, need for our abiding happiness to know how to do some one thing better than we do any other one thing, and need to do it each day with an absorbing energy and interest according to the strength given us.

## 87.

Neither arms defended the valiant nor submission the timorous. No age or sex was spared. Infants on the breast were pierced by the same blow with their mothers who implored for mercy. Even a multitude to the number of ten thousand persons who had surrendered themselves prisoners and were promised quarter, were butchered in cold blood by those ferocious conquerors. The streets of Jerusalem were covered with dead bodies, and the triumphant warriors, after every enemy was subdued and slaughtered, immediately turned themselves with the sentiments of humiliation and contrition towards the holy sepulchre.

## 88.—CORIOLANUS'S MOTHER ADDRESSES HER SON.

Permit me to know before I receive your embrace<sup>1</sup> whether I have come to an enemy or to a son; whether I am a captive or a mother in your camp. Has long life and unhappy old age brought me to this, that I should see you an exile and afterwards an enemy? Could you devastate this land which gave you birth<sup>2</sup> and nourished you? Did not your anger leave you as you entered its territory? Did it not occur<sup>3</sup> to you, when Rome was in your sight, "Within those walls are my home and gods; my mother, wife and children?" Therefore had I not given you birth,<sup>4</sup> Rome would not now be assailed. If I had not a son, I should have died free, in a free land. I can no longer endure a situation<sup>5</sup> as disgraceful to you as it is sad to myself; nor am I long for this world<sup>6</sup> in which my cup of woe is full.<sup>7</sup> Do you see to those whom, if you continue on this course,<sup>8</sup> either an early<sup>9</sup> death or long servitude awaits<sup>10</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> *complexus*, us. <sup>2</sup> *gigno*, 3, *genui*, *genitus*. <sup>3</sup> *succurrit*. impersonal. <sup>4</sup> give birth to -*pario*, 3, *peperi*, *partus*. <sup>5</sup> Eliminate the abstract noun. <sup>6</sup> Nor am I about to be long in this life. <sup>7</sup> I am most miserable. <sup>8</sup> continue on this course = *pergo*. <sup>9</sup> *immaturus*. <sup>10</sup> *maneo*.

## 89.

Lars Porsena, King of Clusium, to whom the Tarquins had fled, thinking that the Romans could easily be defeated, marched against the city at the head of<sup>1</sup> a vast army. On no previous occasion<sup>2</sup> did so

great terror seize<sup>3</sup> the Senate. So strong<sup>4</sup> was the power<sup>5</sup> of Clusium<sup>6</sup> at that time, and so great was the name of Porsena. The Romans were not only afraid of the enemy, but of their own citizens as well, lest the plebs seized with fright,<sup>7</sup> might admit<sup>8</sup> the kings within the city and<sup>9</sup> accept peace at the price of<sup>10</sup> slavery.

Porsena seized the Janiculum without opposition and would have entered the city by the Sublician bridge, had not Horatius Cocles with two comrades kept the whole Etruscan army at bay<sup>11</sup>, while the Romans broke down the bridge behind him. When only a small part of the bridge was left, Horatius bade his two companions go back, while he remained alone to face the foe. For some time they hesitated in amazement at the courage of the Roman, then raising a shout, they hurl their weapons from all sides on the one (remaining) foe. At last the crash of the falling timbers<sup>12</sup> and the shouts of his countrymen told him the work was finished. Then, after praying, "O Father Tiber, may you preserve these arms and this soldier," armed as he was, he plunged into the Tiber and swam across in safety to his countrymen, amid a shower of arrows from the enemy<sup>13</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> cum. <sup>2</sup> non unquam alias ante. <sup>3</sup> invado, 3, si, sus. <sup>4</sup> validus. <sup>5</sup> res. <sup>6</sup> Clusinus. Adj. <sup>7</sup> metu percussus. <sup>8</sup> recipio. <sup>9</sup> One finite verb. <sup>10</sup> cum, <sup>11</sup> keep at bay, one verb. <sup>12</sup> Say, the broken bridge. <sup>13</sup> many arrows falling upon (him), *superincido*, Abl. Abs. . . Omit 'from the enemy.'

## 90.

In the meantime the arrival of the ambassadors from Rome was announced. Messengers had already been despatched by Hannibal to meet<sup>1</sup> them<sup>2</sup> at the sea, (and) to say that it would be unsafe for them to come to the camp amid (*inter*) the warfare (*arma*) of so many and such wild tribes, and that at such a crisis (*discrimen rerum*) Hannibal had no time to hear embassies. It was quite evident that if<sup>3</sup> not admitted they would at once go to Carthage. Accordingly, he sends messengers ahead with a despatch to the leaders of the Barcine faction (*factio*), saying that the ambassadors should not be heard.

<sup>1</sup> send to meet—*obviam mitto*. <sup>2</sup> Represent by the rel. pron. at the beginning of the sentence. <sup>3</sup> Represent by participle, *admitto*.

## 91.

Alexander the Great, king of the Macedonians, was asked by Perillus, one of his friends, to give a dowry to his daughters. Being commanded to take fifty talents, Perillus answered "ten will be enough." "For thee," said Alexander, "enough to take, but for me not enough to give." And the king having once upon a time commanded his steward to give Anaxarchus, the philosopher, as much as he might ask, the steward said: "But he asks a hundred talents." "He is quite right," said Alexander; "since he knows that he has a friend both able and willing to give him such an amount."

## 92.

Epaminondas was carried off the field with the spear-head (*ferrum*) still fixed in his breast. Knowing that he had received a mortal

wound, he asked first, "Is my shield safe?" then, having seen it, "Have we conquered?" Then having been informed that Iolaidas and Daiphantus, whom he intended to succeed him in the command, were both slain, he observed: "You must make peace." The spear-point was then withdrawn (*extraho*), and he died immediately.

## 93.

After the battle at the Arginusae many men were left on the shattered ships, and there was a great storm and violent wind. The sailors on these ships hoped that some one would come to help them, but no one came. Afterwards a certain man, who said that he had been saved, alleged that he had heard some of those perishing say to him: "If you are saved, go tell the Demos that we who have fought for our country bravely, died, and the commanders would not save us."

## 94.

Cyrus, having conquered Croesus, pitied him, and wondered at his wisdom. When the soldiers of Cyrus were plundering all the wealth of Croesus, Croesus looked at them, and asked Cyrus if he might say what he thought. "Say on," said Cyrus. "Whose," asked Croesus, "is the treasure which your soldiers are laying waste?" "Yours," answered Cyrus. "Not mine, but yours," said Croesus. "It is mine no longer; it is now yours."

## 95.

At this very time, however, Fiesco, with whom the commissioners had received instructions to conclude a treaty, passed away. He had just completed all arrangements to his satisfaction<sup>1</sup> and was coming out of the harbor to join his (victorious) companions when he heard an unusual<sup>2</sup> tumult aboard the admiral's boat. Terrified by the shouting and fearing that the slaves would break their chains and overpower his companions he hurried to the scene.<sup>3</sup> A plank<sup>4</sup> stretched from the shore to the ship. He was rushing across this when by some chance<sup>5</sup> it overturned and precipitated him into the sea. Weighed down by his heavy armor he at once sank to the bottom and perished at the very moment when beyond a doubt he had within his grasp<sup>6</sup> everything which a man eager for power<sup>7</sup> could desire.

<sup>1</sup>Satisfactorily, or, just as he wished. <sup>2</sup>*insolitus*, or greater than custom allowed (*consuetudo ferebat*). <sup>3</sup>thither. <sup>4</sup>*tabula*, æ. <sup>5</sup>*forte*. <sup>6</sup>was going to gain. <sup>7</sup>desirous of rule.

## 96.—GERUNDIVE.

1. The cities must be taken. We must storm the towns.
2. Peace must be made. The enemy must give hostages.
3. Our friends should have been liberated. All must be pardoned.
4. War will have to be waged. You must set out at once.



5. The Romans must destroy Carthage. They must conquer or die.
6. The Britons must build ships. We must fortify our camp.
7. All must obey the laws. You should have resisted more bravely.
8. The soldiers must protect the citizens. We must live well.
9. They should have returned home sooner. You must ascertain this.
10. We must hear the ambassadors. We must spare him.
11. The tyrants must be banished. They had to leap down from the ships.

## 97.—IDIOMS.

1. Not knowing when you intended to return, I left the city.
2. Being unable to storm the citadel, they sent for reinforcements.
3. Not wishing to desert my friend, I asked the judge for his acquittal.
4. On the complaint of the exiles, he undertook the siege of the city.
5. When we asked him why he had not informed us of the surrender of the city he replied that he did not know of it himself at that time.
6. Being about to die, he pardoned those whom previously he had threatened with death.
7. After a year spent in a vain attempt to take this town, he was forced to retire and grant his enemies peace.

## 98—IDIOMATIC.

Once upon a time two boys, Caius and Balbus, left their home in the city to rest for a few days in the country. While they were walking in the fields one day, Caius said to Balbus that he hated the din of cities, and that the country was always most pleasing to him. For some time Balbus held his peace, then, looking up at his friend, said that he had promised his father to return home before the fifth day that he might see his sister whom he hoped to find at home. Caius replied that he would rather keep his promises than be the richest man in the world. So after much conversation that day about the past and many attempts to foretell the future they wended their way home in safety.

## 99.

When Otho heard that all hope was lost, and that the battle by which the empire was decided had proved adverse, he took his resolution, and called together the soldiers. It was not without difficulty that he calmed them. They clamored, in the frenzy of their courage and indignation, that the state could still be restored; that a prince who still had his cohorts faithful need not despair. Let him only keep his spirit, they would protect him, and all would be well. The emperor thanked them, but added sadly that his life was not worth such a price. He had not begun the civil war, and he was unwilling to be accused of prolonging it.



## 100.—CICERO TO BRUTUS.

My friend, C. Trebatius, wrote me that you had inquired of him where I was, and that you were sorry that on account of your health you did not see me when I came to the city. Of this I personally am very sorry. For had we met, I am sure that everything would have been smoothed over (**placare**) between us, not only by our conversation, but by our very meeting together. Now, I should like you to write me if you have heard anything about the movements of Antony. I had hoped that you would see him on your return, either at Dyrrachium or in the city. I shall write you more fully on some other occasion of my plans for saving the Republic. You know how important it is for me to know whether Caesar intends to return to Italy this winter or not. I could have wished he had taken Flaccus with him. Do you, I entreat, let me know where and when I can see you.

Naples, Oct. 25th.

---



# VOCABULARY.

This vocabulary, though not specially prepared to cover the words in the supplementary exercises, should be quite sufficient for the writing of all ordinary Latin prose. The student should be very careful to avoid getting into the easily-acquired habit of turning to the vocabulary without testing the memory. What is required is not more words but more power to use the words already acquired. The genitive of nouns in a, 1st declension, and in um, 2nd declension, is not given. The gender of nouns, when easily determined, is not given. In the case of transitive verbs the pf. part. pass. is given. In the case of intransitive verbs the neuter of the pf. part. pass. (used impersonally) or the fut. act. part. is given, if used. When the principal parts are all regular the conjugation is indicated by the figure alone. Vowels long are marked. Vowels short are not marked except where mistakes are liable to be made. The quantity of syllables in other cases is not marked. A verb or preposition governs the acc. unless otherwise stated.

## A.

**abandon**, dēsero, 3, ui, sertus.  
relinquo, 3, liqui, lictus.

(undertaking)

omitto, 3, mīsi, missus.

=betray.

prōdo, 3, dīdi, dītus.

**abdicate**, mē abdicō, 1 (abl.).  
magistratum abdicō.

**ability**, ingenium.

**able**, I am, possum, posse, potui.

**about**, (adv.) circiter; ferē; fermē.  
(prep.)—concerning, dē(abl.).

**above** (adv.), suprā.

**absent**, I am, absum, esse, fui.

**abundance**, cōpia.

**accidentally**, forte, or accidit ut.

**accomplish**, perficio, 3, fēci, fectus.

**accord**, of one's own, suā sponte;  
ultrō.

**accordance with**, in, ex; abl. abs.

**accordingly**, itaque; igitur.

**account of**, on, ob; propter.

**accuse**, accūsō, 1.

**accused**, the, reus, i.

**achievement**, rēs gesta.

**acknowledge**, confiteor, 2, fessus.

**acquire**, consequor, 3, secūtus

adipiscor, 3, adeptus.

paro, 1.

**acquit**, absolvo, 3, solvi, solūtus.

**across**, trans.

**act**, factum.

**action**, rēs, rei.

bring, against, reum facere.

**admiration**, admiratio, ōnis.

**address**, colloquor, 3, locūtus.

**adjudge guilty**—condemno, 1.

**advance**, prōgredior, di, gressus.

prōcēdo, 3, cessi, cessūrus

(trans.) prōmoveo, 3, mōvi,  
mōtus.

**advice**, consilium.

**advise**, suādeo, 2, suāsi, suāsum,

moneo, 2, monui, itus.

**affair**, rēs, rei; negōtium.

**affright**, timor, ōris; metus, ūs.

with=terrified.

**afraid**, I am, (of), vereor, 2, itus,  
timeo, 2, ui, itus.

**after** (adv. or prep.), post.

**afterwards**, post; postea; deinde.

**after** (conj.), postquam.

**again**, rursus; iterum, a second time.

**again and again**, etiam atque etiam.

**against**, in; contrā; adversus.

I am, obsto, 1, stiti, stātūrus.

**age**, aetās, ātis,

at the age of=born.

**ago**, abhinc.

**agree**, consentio, 4, sensi, sensūrus.

**agreeable**, grātus.

**aid**, auxilium.

iuvo, 1, iūvi, iūtus; adiuvo.

come to the aid of,

subvenio (dat.); succurro, 3, curri,  
cursum (dat.).

aim at, peto, 3, ivi, itus.  
 make it my aim, id ago, 3, ēgi, actus.

alarm, on the first=at first, primō.

alarmed, permōtus.

Albans, Albāni, ōrum.

alike, iuxtā, pariter.

alive, vivus, vivens.

all, omnis.  
 all together, universi ; cuncti.

alliance, societas, ātis.

allow, permitto ; sino, 3, sīvi, situs ;  
 patior, pati, passus.

allowed, be, licet.

ally, socius, i.

almost, ferē ; paene, with verbs.

alone, sōlus ; ūnus.

along with, cum (abl.).

already, iam.

although, etsi.

also, etiam ; quōque.

ambassador, lēgātus, i.

Ambiorix, Ambiōrix, igis.

ambush, insidiae, ārum.

among, in (abl.) ; inter ; per.

ancestors, māiōres, um.

ancient, antiquus.

anger, ira.

angry, irātus ; =in anger.

Anglo-Saxons, Angli, ōrum.

announce, nuntio, 1.

annoy, vexo, 1.

another, alius.

answer, respondeo, 2, dī, sum.

any, ullus (after negatives) ; aliquis ;  
 any you please, quīvis.

anyone, quisquam (after negatives).

any longer=longer, diutius.

anywhere, usquam.

anywhither, aliquō.

appear=seem, videor, 2, vīsus.

appease, plāco, 1.

apply, adhibeo, 2, ui, itus.

approach, advenio ; adeo, ire, ii, itūrus,  
 appropinquo, 1.  
 adventus, ūs ; aditus, ūs.

approaching, futūrus, imminens, tis.

armed, armātus=in arms.

arms, arma, ōrum.

army, exercitus, ūs ; aciēs (in the  
 field)

agmen, inis, N. (on the  
 march).

around, circum.

arraign, accūso, 1 ; reum facio.

arrival, adventus, ūs.

arrive (at), pervenio ad ; advenio.

arrow, sagitta.

as (conj.), ut ; ita...ut ; sicut.

as though, tanquam ; quasi ; velut.

as soon as, cum primum.

ascend, ascendo, 3, di, cenum.

ascertain, cognosco, 3, nōvi, nitus.

ashamed, I am, pudet me.

ask, rogo, 1 ; interrogo, 1 ; peto.  
 (question), quaero, 3, quaeſivi,  
 situs.

assault, oppugno, 1 ; adior, iri, ortus.  
 oppugnatio, ōnis ; impetus, ūs.

assemble, convoco, 1 ; cōgo, 3, cōēgi,  
 coactus ;  
 (intrans.) convenio.

assembly, conventus, ūs ; consilium.

assert, dico ; affirmo, 1.

assist=aid.

assuredly, prōfecto.

at, ad ; apud ; Loc.

at all, omnino.

at any rate, certe.

at last, tandem.

at once, statim, confestim.

Athenian, Athēniensis.

Athens, Athēnae, ārum.

attack=assault, make attack  
 upon, impetum facere in (acc.).

attain, consequor, 3, secūtus.

attempt, cōnor, 1.

attend to, administro, 1.

augur, augur, uris.

autumn, auctumnus, i.

avail one's self of, ūtor, ūti, ūsus.

avenge (one's self upon),  
 ulciscor, ei, ultus.

Aventine, Aventinus.

avoid, to=ne (negative purpose).

await, exspecto, 1 ;  
 maneo, 2, mansi, sūrus.

aware of, I am, scīo, 4 ;  
 cognosco, 3, nōvi,  
 nitus.

B.

back, tergum.  
 (adv.) retro.

baggage, impedimenta, ōrum.

band, manus, ūs.  
 banish, ex civitate pello.  
 bank, ripa.  
 barbarian, barbarus, i.  
 base, turpis, e.  
 battle, pugna, proelium.  
     join, proelium committo;  
     manūs consero, 3, ui, sertus.  
 bear, fero, ferre, tuli, lātus.  
     gero, 3, gessi, gestus.  
 because, quod; quia; quandoquidem.  
 become, fio, fieri, factus.  
 becomes, it, decet, ēre, uit.  
 befalls, it, evenit, contingit.  
 befits, it, decet, 2.  
 before (prep.), ante; prae, (abl.).  
     (adv.), antea; ante.  
     (conj.), antequam; priusquam;  
     (adj.), prior.  
 beg, rogo, 1; peto.  
 begin, coepi; incipio, 3, cēpi, ceptus.  
 beginning, in the, initio; primus,  
     initus; A. A.  
 begun, coeptus.  
 behave, sē gero; sē praebeo, 2.  
 behold, aspicio, 3, spexi, spectus;  
     conspicio.  
 Belgae, Belgae, ārum.  
 believe, crēdo, 3; crēdidi, crēditus.  
 benefit, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui.  
     beneficium.  
 beseech, ōro, 1; precor, 1.  
 besides, praeterea; insuper.  
 besiege, obsideo, 2, sēdi, sessus;  
     oppugno.  
 betray, prōdo, 3, prōdidi, ditus.  
 better, melior, ius.  
 between, inter.  
 beware, caveo, 2, cāvi, cautus.  
 beyond, ultrā.  
 bitter enemy, inimicissimus.  
 blame, culpo, 1.  
     culpa.  
 blockade, obsideo, 2, sēdi, sessus.  
     obsidio, ōnis.  
 bloody, cruentus.  
 body, corpus, oris, N.  
     of men, manus, ūs, F.  
 bold, audax, ācis.  
 boldness, audācia.  
 booty, praeda; spolia, ōrum.  
 born, am, nascor, 3, nātus.  
 both, uterque; ambō.

both...and, et...et; cum...tum.  
 bound, contineo, 2, ui, tentus.  
 bounds, to set, to, tempero, 1 (dat.);  
     moderor, 1 (dat.).  
 boundary, finis, is, M.  
 boyhood, pueritia.  
     in—, as a boy—puer.  
     from, a puero.  
 branch, rāmus, i.  
 brave, fortis, e.  
 bravery, fortitūdo, inis, F.  
     virtūs, ūtis, F.  
 break down, refringo, 3, frēgi, fractus.  
 bribery, ambitus, ūs.  
 bridge, pons, pontis, M.  
 bring, dūco; 3, duxi, ductus.  
     back, reduco.  
 brief, brevis, e.  
 briefly, breviter.  
 Britain, Britannia.  
 broad, lātus.  
 brother, frāter, tris.  
 build, aedifico, 1.  
     a (long) wall, mūrum dūco.  
 burden, onus, eris, N.  
 burn (trans.), ūro, 3, ussi, ustus; com-  
     buro; incendo, 3, di, sus  
     (intrans.), ardeo, 2, arsi, arsūrus.  
 burst, rumpo, 3, rūpi, ruptus.  
     into, irrumpo.  
     out, ērumpo.  
 business, rēs; negōtium.  
 but, sed; at; vērum (emphatic);  
     autem.  
 bury, sepelio, 4, ivi, ultus.  
 buy, emo, 3, ēmi, emptus.  
 by, ā or ab.  
 by means of, per.

## C.

calamity, calamitās, ātis, F.  
     malum.  
     in war, clādēs, is, F.  
 call, voco, 1; appello, 1.  
 camp, castra, ōrum.  
 camp-follower, cālō, ōnis.  
 can, possum.  
 canton, pāgus, i.  
 candidate for, be, peto.  
 captive, captivus, i.  
 capital, caput, itis, N.  
 captor, quī capit, etc.

**capture**, capio, 3, cēpi, captus.  
of the city=of the city  
taken.

**care**, cūra ;  
free from, sēcūrus.

**carefully**, diligenter.

**carry**, porto, 1 ; fero.  
across, transporto ; trādūco ;  
transveho, 3, vexi, vec-  
tus.

**carry on** (war), gero, 3, gessi, gestus.

**cast up to**, obicio, 3, iēcī, iectus, alicui  
aliquid.

**cause**, causa.

**cautiously**, cautē.

**cavalry**, equitātus, ūs ; equitēs, um.

**cease**, dēsino, 3, sii, sitūrus ;  
dēsisto, 3, stiti, stitūrus.

**centurion**, centurio, ōnis.

**certain**, stated, certus.  
one, a, quīdam.

**chain**, catēna ; vinculum.

**chance**, by, forte.

**chance**, cāsus, ūs.

**change**, mūto, 1 ; permūto.

**change of purpose**, inconstantia.

**character**, mōrēs, um, M.

**charge into**, irruo, 3, ui ;  
irrumpto, 3, rūpi, ruptus.  
impetum facio in ;  
invehor, 3, vectus in ;  
invādo, 3, vāsī, vāsūrus,  
in.

**charge**, impetus, ūs.  
—accusation, crīmen, inis,  
N.

**check**, reprimo, 3, pressi, pressus.

**cheer on**, hortor, 1.

**chief**, princeps, ipis.  
of, to be, praesum.

**chiefly**, maximē.

**children**, liberī, ōrum.

**choose**, dēligo, 3, lēgi, lectus.

**circumstance**, rēs, rei.

**circumstances**, tempus, ōris, N.

**citadel**, arx, arcis, F.

**citizen**, cīvis, is.

**city**, urbs, urbis, F.

**clear**, purgo, 1.

**client**, cliens, tis.

**climb**, scando, 3, di, sūrus ;  
ascendo ; conscendo.

**close**, claudio, 3, si, sus.  
operio, 4, ui, pertus.

**coast**, litus, ōris, N. ; ōra.

**cohort**, cohors, tis, F.

**cold**, frīgus, ōris, N.

**colleague**, collēga.

**collect**, colligo, 3, lēgi, lectus ;  
cōgo, 3, cōēgi, coactus ;  
convoco, 1.

**colonist**, colōnus, i.

**combatant**, pugnans ; is qui pugnāt,  
etc.

**come upon**=find, occurro, 3, curri,  
cursum.

**command**, impero, 1 (dat. and ut.).  
iubeo, 2, iussi, iussus (acc.  
and infin.).  
be in, praesum (dat.).  
imperium, imperātum.

**commission**, mando, 1.

**commonwealth**, rēspública, cīvītās.

**companion**, socius, i ; comēs, itis.

**compel**, cōgo, 3, cōēgi, coactus.

**complain**, quēror, 3, questus.

**comrade**=companion.

**conceal**, cēlo, 1 ; abdo, 3, abdidī, ditus.

**concerns**, it, attinet ad ;  
réfert ; interest.  
as far as—me, quod ad  
mē attinet.

**concerning**, dē (abl.).

**condemn**, damno, 1 ; condemno, 1.

**conference**, colloquium.

**confess**, confiteor, 2, fessus.

**confidence**, fidēs, ei, F.  
put or have c. in, con-  
fido, 3, fisus.

**congratulate**, grātulor, 1 (dat.).

**conquer**, supero, 1 ; vinco, 3, vici, victus.

**conqueror**, victor, ōris.

**conspirator**, coniūrātus, i, or use verb  
coniūro, 1.

**constitution**, rēspública.

**consul**, consul, ulis.

**consulship**, consulātus, ūs.

**consult**, consulo, 3, ui, sultus.

**contest**, certāmen, inis, N.

**contrary**, contrārius.

**convene**, convoco, 1.

**converse**, colloquor, 3, locūtus.

**convey**, supporto, 1.

**convict**, convinco, 3, vici, victus ;  
damno, 1.

**corn**, frūmentum.

**council**, consilium.



countenance, vultus, ūs, M.  
 country, in the, rūri.  
 courage, virtūs, ūtis; fortitūdo, inis, F.  
 course, adopt a= form a plan,  
 consilium in eo, 4, ii, itus.  
 cover, tego, 3, texti, tectus;  
 (march), conficio.  
 coward, ignāvus; timidus.  
 cowardice, ignāvia.  
 cowardly, ignāvē.  
 craft, dolus, i.  
 crave for, dēsidero, 1.  
 crime, scelus, eris, N.; flagitium.  
 crop, sēgēs, itis.  
 cross, transeo, 4, ii, itūrus.  
 crowd, turba; multitūdo, inis, F.  
 crown—garland, cōrōna;  
 —sovereignty, regnum, im-  
 pērium.  
 cruel, crūdēlis, e; saevus.  
 cruelty, crūdēlitas, ātis, F.  
 crush, opprimo, 3, pressi, pressus.  
 supero, 1.  
 cultivate, colo, 3, ui, cultus.  
 custom, mōs, mōris, M.; consuetūdo,  
 inis, F.  
 cut down (man), occīdo, 3, cīdi, cīsus.  
 (bridge), rescindo, 3, scīdi,  
 scissus.

## D.

daily, quotidiē; in diēs (with compara-  
 tives).  
 danger, periculum; discrīmen, inis, N.  
 dangerous, periculōsus.  
 dare, audeo, 2, ausus.  
 daring, audācia.  
 audax, ācis.  
 darkness, tenebrae, ārum.  
 dart, tēlum; iaculum.  
 daughter, filia.  
 day, diēs, diē, M.  
 the—before, prīdiē.  
 the—after, postridiē.  
 daybreak, prima lux.  
 dead, mortuus.  
 dear, cārus.  
 death, mors, mortis, F.  
 to put to, interficio; morte  
 afficio.  
 deceive, dēcipio, 3, cēpi, ceptus;  
 fallo, 3, fefelli, falsus.  
 decide, dēcerno, 3, crēvi, crētus.  
 statuo, 3, ui, ūtus; constituo.

decision, iudicium; sententia.  
 declare, dico; dēclāro, 1;  
 prōfiteor, 2, fessus.  
 war, indicō, 3, dixi, dictus.  
 decree, dēcerno, 3, crēvi, crētus.  
 dēcrētum.  
 deed, factum; rēs.  
 deep, altus.  
 defeat, vinco, 3, vici, victus.  
 clādēs, is, F.  
 defend, dēfendo, 3, di, sus;  
 tueor, 2, tuitus or tūtus.  
 defence of, in, prō (abl.).  
 defendant, reus, i.  
 defile, saltus, ūs, M.; faucēs, ium, F.  
 delay, mōror, 1; dēmōror; cunctor, 1.  
 mōra; cunctatio, ōnis, F.  
 deliberate, dēlibero, 1.  
 consulo, 3, sului, sultus.  
 delight, dēlecto, 1; oblecto.  
 deliver up, trādo, 3, didi, ditus.  
 demand, posco, 3, poposci; postulo, 1.  
 demolish, dēleo, 2, ēvi, ētus.  
 deny, nego, 1.  
 depart, abeo, 4, ii, itūrus;  
 discēdo, 3, cessi, cessūrus.  
 departure, discessus, ūs, M.; use a verb.  
 depose, exigo, 3, ēgi, actus;  
 expello, 3, pūli, pulsus.  
 deprive, privo, 1; spolio, 1.  
 deputation, lēgatio, ōnis, F.  
 derive=take, capio.  
 descendants, posteri, ōrum; nepōtēs,  
 um.  
 desert, dēsero, 3, serui, sertus;  
 linquo, 3, liqui, lictus  
 deserter, transfuga.  
 deserve, mereo, 2; mereor, 2.  
 well of, bene merēri dē.  
 design, consilium.  
 desire, cupio, 3, iui, itus; opto, 1;  
 vōlo, velle, volui.  
 cupido, inis, F. and M.;  
 eagerness, cupiditās, ātis, F.  
 desirous, cupidus.  
 desist, dēsisto, 3, stiti, stitūrus; absisto.  
 desolate, vastātus.  
 despair, dēspēro, 1 (acc. or dē with abl.).  
 dēspēratio, ōnis, F.  
 despatch, mitto, 3, mīsi, missus;  
 praemitto,  
 nuntius, i; litterae, arum.  
 despise, dēspicio, 3, spexi, spectus;  
 sperno, 3, sprēvi, sprētus;  
 contemno, 3, tempsi, temptus.

despoil, spolio, 1.  
 destination, use pervenire.  
 destroy, dēleo, 2, ēvi, ētus; vasto, 1;  
     perdo, 3, perdidī, ditus.  
 destruction, exitium, perniciēs, ēi.  
 deter, dēterreo, 2.  
 determine, = decide.  
 device, consilium.  
 devise, excogito, 1.  
 dictatorship, dictātūra.  
 die, mōrior, mōri, mortuus  
     obeo, 4, ii, itus; vitā excēdo.  
 different, diversus; alius.  
 differently to, aliter or secus ac.  
 difficult, difficilis, e.  
 difficulty, difficultās, ātis, F.;  
     with, vix.  
 dignity, honōs, ōris; māiestās, ātis.  
 diligence, diligentia; industria.  
 diligent, diligens, tis.  
 dinner, cēna; prandium.  
 disadvantage, at a, impedītus.  
 disaster, calamitās, ātis, F.  
     malum; clādēs, is, F.  
 disastrous, fūnestus; perniciōsus.  
 discourse, sermo, ōnis.  
 discredit, reflect, use indignus.  
 disembark = land.  
 disgraceful, turpis, e.  
 dismount—leapdown from horse  
     or horses.  
 dismiss, dimitto.  
 disorder, throw into, turbo, 1.  
 display, ostendo, 3, di, tus.  
 displease, displiceo, 2, ui, itūrus.  
 dissuade, dissuādeo, 2, suāsī, suāsūrus.  
 dissent, dissentio, 4, sensi, sensūrus.  
 distance, intervallum.  
     in the, procul.  
 distant, am, absum.  
 distinction, honōs, ōris, M.  
 distinguished, clārus; praeclārus;  
     eximius.  
 distribute, distribuo, 3, ui, ūtus.  
     partior, 4, partītus.  
 district, regio, ōnis.  
 ditch, fossa.  
 divide, dividō, 3, vīsi, vīsus.  
 double, duplex, icis.  
 doubt, dubito, 1.  
     dubium.

doubtful, anceps, cipitis.  
 down from, dē (abl.).  
 drag off, abstraho, 3, traxi, tractus.  
 draw, traho, 3, traxi, tractus.  
     (sword), stringo, 3, strinxī,  
     strictus.  
     off, abdūco; dētraho.  
     up or out, instruo, 3, struxi,  
     structus.  
     up on shore, subdūco.  
 dream, somnium.  
 drive, ago, 3, ēgi, actus; fugo, 1.  
     pello, 3, pepuli, pulsus.  
     away, abigo, 3, ēgi, actus; pello.  
 duly, rite; iustē.  
 during, per; inter; omit.  
 duty, officium; munus, eris, N.;  
     honestās, ātis, F.; honesta, N., Pl.  
     our, quae facere debēmus or (nos)  
     oportet;  
     it is one's, oportet.  
 dwell, habito, 1; incolo, 3, colui, cultus.

## E.

each, quisque; ūnusquisque.  
 each other, inter sē, etc.;  
     alius alium; alter alterum.  
 eager, cupidus.  
 eagerly, cupidē.  
 eagle, aquila.  
 earnestly, vehementer.  
 earth, terra; tellus, ūris, F.  
 easy, facilis, e.  
 easily, facile.  
 either, adj., uterque.  
 either...or, aut—aut; vel—vel.  
 elder, (nātū) māior.  
 elect, dēligo, 3, lēgi, lectus; creo, 1.  
 eloquence, ēloquentia; fācundia.  
 eloquent, ēloquens, tis; fācundus.  
 else (adj.), alius.  
 embrace, amplector, 3, plexus; com-  
     plector.  
 emperor, imperātor, ōris.  
 employ, ūtor, ūti, ūsus.  
 empty, vacuus; inānis, e.  
 encamp, consīdo, 3, sēdi, sessus;  
     castra pōno or loco.  
 enclose, inclūdo, 3, clūsi, clūsus.  
 encounter, congredior, di, gressus;  
     confligo, 3, flixi, flictus.  
 encourage, hortor, I; cōhortor;  
     confirmo, 1.

end, finis, is, M.  
 at the end of, extrēmus.  
 endeavor, cōnor, 1.  
 endowed, praeditus.  
 endure, patior, pati, passus; perfero.  
 endurance, patientia.  
 enemy, hostis;  
 (private), inimicus.  
 engage—promise, spondeo, 2, spon-  
 pondi, sponsus;  
 in battle, proelium com-  
 mitto; pugno; congredior,  
 di, gressus.  
 engagement—battle.  
 enjoy, fruor, frui, fructus; ūtor.  
 enough, satis; sat.  
 enquire, quaero, 3, quaeſivi, sītus.  
 enroll, conscribo, 3, scripsi, scriptus.  
 enter, ineo, 4, ii, itus;  
 ingredior, di, gressus.  
 into a plot, consilium ineo.  
 enthusiasm, studium.  
 entire, tōtus; integer, gra, grum.  
 entreat, prēcōr, 1.  
 entreaty, obsecrātio, ōnis, F.  
 (prex) prēcīs, F.  
 entrust, crēdo, 3, crēdidi, crēditus;  
 committo.  
 envoy, nuntius; lēgātus.  
 envy, invideo, 2, vīdi, vīsus.  
 invidia.  
 equal, par; aequus.  
 equip, instruo, 3, struxi, structus.  
 escape, effugio, 3, fūgi, fugitūrus.  
 fuga; effugium.  
 especially, praesertim; maximē.  
 establish, statuo, 3, ui, ūtus; constituo.  
 Etruscans, Etrusci, ōrum.  
 even, etiam; vel; ipse.  
 not even, ne quidem.  
 evening, vesper, eris and eri, M.  
 ever, unquam.  
 —always, semper.  
 —at any time, quando, ali-  
 quando.  
 every, omnis.  
 everybody, omnēs.  
 everything, omnia.  
 evidence, indicium.  
 evil, malum; incommodum.  
 excellent, optimus.  
 except (prep.), praeter.  
 exertion, use every, id ago ut.

exhort, hortor, 1; cōhortor.  
 exile, exul, ulis; prōfugus.  
 exilium.  
 to be in, exulo, 1.  
 expect, exspecto, 1.  
 expecting, not, inopinans, tis.  
 expectation, expectatio, ōnis, F.  
 spēs, speī, F.; opinio.  
 ōnis, F.  
 expedient, it is, expēdit, ire.  
 expel, expello, 3, puli, pulsus.  
 experience, ūsus, ūs, M.  
 exploit, factum; rēs gesta.  
 extortion, (pecūniae) repetundae.  
 exult, exulto, 1.  
 eye, oculus, i.

## F.

face to face, adversus.  
 fact, rēs, rei, F.  
 faction, factio, ōnis, F.; partēs, ium, F.  
 fail, deficio, 3, fēci, fectus; dēsum.  
 faith, fidēs, ei, F.  
 faithful, fidēlis, e.; fidus.  
 fall, cado, 3, cecidi, casūrus;  
 concido, 3, cidi.  
 to the lot of, contingo, 3, tigi,  
 tactus (dat.).  
 false, falsus; fictus.  
 falsehood, mendācium.  
 tell a, mentior, 4, mentitus.  
 fame, glōria.  
 family, familia.  
 famous, clārus; praeclārus; insignis, e.  
 far from, prōcul ab.  
 far off (adv.), prōcul.  
 far and wide, longē latēque.  
 farm, fundus; praedium; ager.  
 fatal (day), funestus.  
 (wound), mortifer.  
 father, pater, tris.  
 father-in-law, sōcer, eri.  
 fault, culpa; delictum; vitium.  
 favor, fāveo, 2, fāvi, fautūrus.  
 beneficium; grātia.  
 favorable, secundus.  
 fear, timeo, 2; metuo, 3, ui, ūtus;  
 vereor, 2, veritus.  
 metus, ūs, M.; timor, ōris, M.  
 feast, epulor, 1.  
 epulae, ārum; convīvium.  
 feel—perceive, sentio, 4, sensi, sensus.  
 fellow-citizen, cīvis, is.

few, pauci; very few, perpauci.

fidelity, fidēs, eī, F.

field, ager; arvum.

of battle, aciēs, eī, F.

fierce, atrox, ōcis; saevus;  
ferox, ōcis.

fiercely, ferōciter; acriter.

fine, pulcher; bonus; (day) amoenus.

find, invenio, 4, vēnī, ventus.  
réperio, 4, pēri, pertus.

fire, set to, incendo, 3, di, sus.

fire, ignis, is, M.; incendium.  
with fire and sword, ferro et  
igni.

first, primus (adv.), primum.

first, at, primo.

fix, figo, 3, fixi, fixus.

fixed, certus.

five, quinque.

flee, fugio, 3, fūgi, fugitūrus.

fleet, classis, is, F.

flesh, caro, carnis, F.

flight, fuga.

take to, sēsē in fugam dare.  
terga verto, 3, tī, versus.

fly (bird), vōlo, 1.

flee, fugio, 3, fūgi, fugitūrus.

follow, sequor, sequi, secūtus.  
closely, subsequor.

following, posterus.

folly, stultitia; dēmentia.

fond (of), studiōsus.

food, cibus, i.

fool, foolish, stultus.

foot, pēs, pedis, M.

at the foot of, imus.

foot-soldier, pēdēs, itis.

for, Dat.; prō (abl.).

forbid, vēto, 1, vetui, vetitus.

force, vis; manus, ūs, F.

forces, cōpiaē, arum.

forced (march), magnus.

force, cōgo, 3, cōēgi, coactus.

foreign, peregrinus; externus.

foretell, praedico, 3, dixi, dictus.

foresee, prōvideo, 2, vidi, vīsus.

forever, in perpetuum.

forget, obliviscor, ci, oblītus.

forgetful, immemor; oblītus.

forgive, ignosco, 3, nōvi, nōtus.  
veniam do.

forgiveness, vēnia.

form plan, consilium in eo.

former, prior; sup̄erior.

formerly, antea; ōlim; quondam.

fortifications, mūnimenta, orum;  
mūnītio, ōnis.

fortified, mūnītus.

fortify, mūnio, 4.

former, the, ille.

fortune, good or bad, fortūna.  
good, fēlicitās, ātis, F.

forum, fōrum, i.

foully, nefariē.

found, condo, 3, condidi, ditus.  
a colony, dēduco.

founder, conditor, ōris.

fraud, dōlus, i; fraus, fraudis, F.

free, liber, era, erum.  
libero 1.

freeman, liber.

freedman, libertus.

frequent, frēquens, tis; crēber, bra,  
brum.

frequently, crēbrō; saepe.

fresh, rēcens, tis; nōvus;  
integer, gra, grum.

friend, find a f. in, (te) amīco ūti.

friendship, amicitia.

frighten, terreo, 2.

from, ā, ab.

front, in, ā fronte.

in front of, prae(abl.); prō(abl.).

frontier, fines, or sui fines, or sui alone.

fugitive, prōfugus; fugitīvus.

the fugitives — those  
who had fled.

full, plēnus;

(senate), frequens, tis.

in full force = with all forces.

fury, ira; impetus, ūs, M.; vis.

future, futūrus.

in, for the future,  
in futurum.

## G.

gain, consequor, sequi, secūtus; paro, 1.  
possession of, potior, iri, potītus.

games, lūdi, ōrum.

garrison, praesidium

gate, porta; iānuā.

gather, colligo, 3, lēgi, lectus;  
convōco, 1.

Gaul, Gallia.

a, Gallus.

**general**, dux, ducis ; imperātor, ōris.  
**generally**, plērumque ; fermē.  
**German**, Germānus.  
**get**, adipiscor, ci, adeptus ;  
     nanciscor, ci, nactus.  
**gift**, dōnum ; munus, ēris, N.  
**gird**, cingo, 3, cinxi, cinctus.  
**give**, do, dare, dedi, datus.  
     **back**, reddo, 3, reddidi, ditus.  
     **up**, trādo, 3, trādidi, ditus.  
**glad**, laetus ; libens, tis.  
**gladly**, libenter.  
**glory**, glōria ; fāma.  
**go**, eo, ire, ivi, itum ;  
     **back**, redeo, ire, ii, itum.  
     **away**, abeo ; discēdo, 3, cessi, ces-  
     sūrus.  
     **on—be done**, gero, 3, gessi, gestus.  
**go on board**, conscendo, 3, di, sūrus in  
     (acc.).  
     **to meet**, obviam eo, venio.  
**god**, deus. i.  
**gold**, aurum.  
**golden**, aureus.  
**goods**, bona, N. Pl.  
**govern**, rego ; impero, 1.  
**gradually**, paulātim.  
**grain**, frūmentum.  
**grandfather**, āvus, i.  
**grandson**, nēpōs, ōtis.  
**grant**, do, dare, dedi, datus ;  
     concēdo, 3, cessi, cessūrus.  
**grateful**, grātus.  
**great**, magnus, māior, maximus.  
**greater number of**, plūrēs.  
**greatly**, magnopere, vehementer,  
     maximē.  
**greatness**, magnitūdo, inis, F.  
**Grecian**, Graecus.  
**Greece**, Graecia.  
**greedy**, avidus.  
**Greek**, Graecus.  
**grief**, dolor, ōris, M. ; luctus, ūs, M.  
**grieve**, doleo, 2.  
     **for**, lugeo, 2, luxi, luxūrus.  
**groan**, gemitus, ūs, M.  
     gemo, 3, ui.  
**ground**, on the, humi.  
**grow**, cresco, 3, crēvi, crētūrus.  
**grudge**, invideo, 2, vīdi, vīsus.  
**guard**, keep guard, custodio, 4.  
     praesidium.  
**guardian**, custōs, ōdis.

**guest**, hospes, itis.  
**guide**, dux, ducis.  
**guile**, dolus, i.  
**guilt**, scelus, eris, N.  
**guiltless**, innocens, tis ; insons, tis.  
**guilty**, nocens, tis ; noxius ; sons, tis.

## H.

**half**, dimidium ; dīmīdia pars.  
**hand**, manus, ūs, F.  
**hand to hand**, comminus.  
**hand over**, trādo, 3, didi, ditus.  
**Hannibal**, Hannibal, alis.  
**hang over**, immineo, ēre.  
**hapless**, miser, era, erum.  
**happen**, fio, fieri, factus ;  
     pass. of gero.  
**happens**, it, accidit ut ; fit ut.  
     **to (a person)**, it, accidit,  
     contingit alicui ut.  
**happiness**, vīta beāta ; beātē vivere.  
**happy**, beātus ; fēlix, Icīs.  
**harass**, vexo, 1.  
**harbor**, portus, ūs, M.  
**hard**, difficilis, e.  
**hardly**, vix.  
**hardy**, fortissimus ; intrepidus.  
**harm**, damnum ; dētrimentum.  
     noceo, 2, ui, itūrus ;  
     **do harm to**=harm.  
**haste**, celeritās, ātis, F.  
**hasten**, propero, 1 ; festīno, 1.  
**hate**, ōdi.  
**hatred**, ōdium.  
**hateful**, odiōsus ; invīsus.  
**head**, caput, itis, N.  
     **at the head of**, cum.  
     **to be**, praesum.  
**health**, valētūdo, inis, F.  
     **to be in good h.**, valeo, 2, ui.  
**heart**, cor, cordis, N. ; animus.  
**heat**, calor, ōris, M.  
**Heaven**, di immortāles.  
**heavy**, gravis, e.  
**Hellespont**, Hellespontus, i.  
**help**=aid.  
**hence**, hinc.  
**here**, hic.  
**hereafter**, postea.  
**hero**, hēros, ōis ; vir.  
**hesitate**, dubito, 1 ; cūctor, 1.



hesitation, mōra ; cunctatio, ōnis, F ;  
dubitatio, ōnis, F.  
hide, condo, 3, condidi, ditus.  
hill, collis, is, M.  
himself, ipse.  
hire, condūco.  
hither, hūc,  
hold, habeo, 2 ; teneo, 2, ui, tentus.  
hold out, sustineo, 2 ; resisto, 3, stiti.  
home, domus, i or ūs, F ;  
a, domicilium.  
at home, domi.  
honor (abs.), fidēs, ei, F.  
honos, ōris, M. ; dignitās, ātis, F.  
honorable, honestus.  
hope, spēro, 1.  
spēs, spēi, F.  
horse, equus, i.  
horseman, equēs, itis.  
horse—cavalry, equitēs, um.  
Horace, Horatius.  
host, multitūdo, inis, F.  
hostile, infestus ; hostis ; inimicus.  
hostage, obsēs, idis.  
house=home.  
in my house, apud me.  
how, quōmodo ; ut ; quemadmodum.  
(adv.), quam.  
how much, quantus.  
however, tamen ; autem.  
huge, ingens, tis.  
human, humanus.  
hunger, fāmēs, is, F.  
hunter, venātor, ōris.  
hurl, conicio, 3, iēci, iectus ;  
praecipito, 1.  
hurry, festīno, 1 ; prōpero, 1.  
in a hurry, subito ; confestim.  
hurt, noceo, 2, ui, nocitūrus.  
laedo, 3, si, sus.

## I.

Ides, Idūs, uum, F.  
idleness, ignāvia.  
if, si.  
ignorant, ignārus ; inscius ;  
insciens, tis ; nesciens.  
ill, am, aegrōto, 1.  
immediately, statim ; confestim.  
immense, maximus ; ingens.  
immortal, immortalis, e.  
impassable, invius ; not able to be  
crossed.

impede, impedio, 4 ; prōhibeo, 2.  
impel, impello, 3, puli, pulsus.  
impiety, impietās, ātis, F.  
scelus, eris, N.  
impious, impius.  
importance, of the greatest=  
greatest.  
impossible, quod fieri non potest.  
imprisonment, vincula, ōrum.  
impunity, with, impunē.  
in all directions, passim ; in omnēs  
partēs.  
in regard to (prep.), dē (abl.).  
inborn, innātus ; insitus.  
incompetence, inscītia.  
inconsistent with, abhorrens ab ;  
aliēnus ab.  
increase (trans.), augeo, 2, auxi, auctus.  
(intrans.), cresco, 3, crēvi,  
crētūrus.  
incredible, incrēdibilis, e.  
indolence, ignāvia ; pigritia ; sōcordia.  
induce, addūco ; indūco.  
indulge, indulgeo, 2, indulsi.  
infantry, peditātus, ūs ; peditēs, um.  
influence, auctoritās, ātis, F. ; grātia ;  
pōtentia.  
influenced, mōtus ; adductus.  
inform, doceo, 2, ui, doctus.  
certiorem facio dē.  
inhabit, colo, 3, ui, cultus ; habito, 1.  
injure, noceo, 2, ui, nocitūrus.  
injury, iniuria ; damnum ;  
dētrimentum.  
innocent, innocens, tis ; insons, tis.  
innocence, innocentia.  
innumerable, innumerābilis, e.  
inside, intrā.  
instead of, prō (abl.).  
tantum abfuit ut . . . ut  
cum posset or deberet, etc.  
instruct, mando, 1 (dat.).  
intelligence is brought, pass. of nun-  
tio, 1.  
intend, fut. part. ; cogito, 1.  
in animo mihi est.  
intention, consilium ; Adapt.  
intercept, interceptio, 3, cēpi, ceptus.  
interest, utilitās, ātis, F. ; utilia, N. Pl.  
it is of, interest.  
consult the i. of = con-  
sult for,  
consulo, 3, ui, tus. with Dat.  
invest, obsideo, 2, sēdi, sessus.



**invincible**, invictus.

**island**, insula.

**issue**, exeo, 4, ii, itūrus;  
ēgredior, gredi, gressus.  
ēventus, ūs; Adapt.

**Italy**, Italia.

## J.

**javelin**, tēlum; iaculum.

**join**, iungo, 3, iunxi, iunctus; coniungo.

**journey**, iter, itineris, N.;  
**make**, iter facio

**joy**, gaudium; laetitia.

**joyful**, laetus.

**be**, laetor, 1; gaudeo, 2, gāvīsus.

**judge**, iudico, 1; iudex, icis.

**judgment**, iudicium; arbitrium.

**jump**, salio, 4, ui, saltūrus.

**over**, transilio, 4, ui, sultūrus.  
**down**, dēsilio.

**jurisdiction**, bring under one's  
**own**,  
suae dīcīōnis facere.

**jury**, iudicēs; consilium.

**just**, iustus.

**just—recently**, mōdo.

**justice**, iustitia;  
**rightness**, iūs, iūris, N.

**justly**, iure.

## K.

**Kalends**, Kalendae, ārum.

**keep**, teneo, 2, ui, tentus.

**retineo**, 2, ui, tentus.

**off**, arceo, 2, ui.

**one's word**, fidem servāre or  
praestāre.

**kill**, interficio; caedo, 3, cecīdi, caesus;  
occido, 3, cidi, cīsus.

**kind**, benignus.

**kindly**, benignē.

**kindness** (abs.), benignitās, ātis, F.;  
cōmitās, ātis, F.  
**a**, beneficium.

**kinsmen**, prōpinqui.

**knight**, equēs, itis.

**know** (man) nōvi, isse.

(thing), scīo, 4, scīvi, scītus.

(cognosco, 3) cognōvi,  
cognītus.

**knowledge**, scīentia.

**knowing**, not, insciens, tis=  
without the know-  
ledge of.

## L.

**labor**, labor, ōris, M.

**lack**, dēsum.  
inōpia.

**ladder**, scāla.

**lake**, lacus, ūs, M.

**land** (trans.), expōno.  
(intrans.), ē navi ēgredior.

**land**, terra; ager.  
**by land and sea**, terrā marique.

**language**, a, lingua;  
**conversation**, sermo,  
ōnis, M.

**last**, proximus; ultimus; postrēmus.  
**at last**, tandem.

**late**, sērus.

**too**, sēro.

**in life**, iam senex;

provectā iam aetāte (A.A.).

**lately**, nuper.

**Latin**, Latīnus.  
**to speak in**, Latīnē loqui.

**latter**, the, hīc.

**laugh**, rīdeo, 2, rīsi, rīsūrus.  
**at**, irrīdeo (dat.).

**law**, lex, lēgis, F.; iūs, iūris, N.  
**divine**, fas (indecl.).

**lawful**, it is, licet.

**lay down**, aside, dēpōno, 3, posui,  
positus.

**lead**, dūco, 3, duxi, ductus.

**lead on**, inspire, addūco.

**leader**, princeps, ipis; dux.

**leap**=jump.

**learn**, study, disco, 3, didici, discitūrus.  
—ascertain, cognosco, 3, nōvi,  
cognītus.

**learned**, doctus.

**learning**, doctrīna; ērudītio, ōnis, F.

**leave** (trans.), linquo, 3, liqui, lictus;  
relinquo.  
(intrans.), abeo; discēdo.

**left**, sinister, tra, trum; laevus.

**legate**, lēgātus, i.

**legion**, legio, ōnis, F.

**leisure**, ōtium.

**at** (adj.), ōtiōsus.

**less**, mīnor, mīnus.

**let**=allow.  
slip, ōmitto.

**letter**, epistola; litterae, ārum.

**levy**, impero, 1; conscribo.

**liable to**, obnoxius.

**liar**, mendax, ācis.

**liberty**, libertās, ātis, F.  
**lie**, mentior, 4, mentitus.  
mendācium.  
**down**, iaceo, 2, ui, iacitūrus.  
**lieutenant**, lēgātus, i.  
**life**, vita.  
**light**, lūx, lūcis, F.; lūmen, inis, N.  
lēvis, e.  
**like**, similis, e.  
**line of battle**, aciēs, ēi, F.  
**listen**, audio.  
**little**, a, paululum.  
too, parum.  
**lines**=fortifications, mūnimenta,  
ōrum; mūnitiōnēs, um.  
**linger**, mōror, 1.  
**live**, vivo, 3, vixi, victurus; habito, 1.  
vitam ago, 3, ēgi, actus.  
on, vescor, ci.  
**load**, onero, 1.  
onus, eris, N.  
**long**, longus.  
(of time), diuturnus.  
(adv.), diū, diutius, diutissimē.  
iam pridem; iam dudum.  
as—as possible, quam diutis-  
simē.  
**long for**, opto, 1.  
**look at**, aspicio, 3, spexi, spectus.  
up at, suspicio.  
**round upon**, circumspicio.  
**loose**, solvo, 3, solvi, solūtus.  
**lose**, amitto; perdo, 3, perdidī, ditus.  
**loss**, damnum; dētrimentum.  
**love**, amor, ōris, M.  
**lover**, a great—of, amantissimus.  
**loyalty**, fidēs, ei, F.  
**lust**, libido, inis, F.

## M.

**mad**, insānus; dēmens, tīs; āmens.  
**mad**, am, insānio, ire; furo, ere.  
**madness**, insānia; dēmentia.  
to such a pitch of,  
eō dēmentiae.  
**Maecenas**, Maecēnās, ātis.  
**magistrate**, magistrātus, ūs.  
**maintain**, sustineo, 2, ui, tentus;  
servo, 1;  
tueor, 2, tuitus.  
**majority**, māior pars.  
**make for**, peto, 3, petīvi, itus.  
**Malta**, Melita.  
**man**, homo, inis; vir.

**manage**, gero, 3, gessi, gestus;  
ago, 3, ēgi, actus; adminis-  
tro, 1.  
**many**, multi.  
**march**, iter, itineris, N.  
iter facere.  
**mark**, nōto, 1; dēsigno, 1.  
**married (man)**, maritus.  
(woman), nupta.  
**marry (of the man)**, dūco; dūco do-  
mum.  
(of the woman), nūbo, 3,  
nupsi, nuptus.  
**marsh**, palūs, ūdis, F.  
**marshal**, instruo, 3, struxi, structus.  
**Marseilles**, Massilia.  
**massacre**, strāgēs, is, F.  
trucido, 1.  
**master (of school)**, magister.  
(of slaves), dominus.  
(of the horse), magister equi-  
tum.  
**matter**, rēs.  
**means**, by no, nequāquam; nihil.  
**meantime**, intereā; interim.  
**meet**, obviam eo, venio;  
occurro, 3, curri, cursūrus.  
together, convenio.  
death, mortem obo, oppeto.  
**meeting**, concio, ōnis, F.  
**memory**, memōria.  
**mention**, memōro, 1; commemorō, 1.  
**mercy**, show=spare, pardon.  
**message**, nuntius, i.  
**messenger**, nuntius.  
**midday**, merīdiēs, ei, M.  
**middle**, midst (adj.), mēdius.  
**might**, vis.  
with all one's, summā vi.  
**mile**, mille passūs.  
**miles**, two, duo millia passuum.  
**milk**, lac, lactis, N.  
**mind**, animus; mens, tīs.  
to be out of one's, insanīre.  
—care for, cūro, 1.  
**mindful**, memor, oris.  
**misfortune**, adversa fortūna;  
rēs adversae.  
**mismanage**, malē rem gero.  
**mistake**, make; be mistaken,  
erro, 1.  
error, ōris, M., errātum.  
**money**, pecūnia; argentum.  
**month**, mensis, is, M.  
**morals**, mōrēs, um, M.

more, plūs.  
(adv.), amplius.  
moreover, autem.  
morning, mǎnš (indecl.).  
mortal (man), mortālis, e;  
(wound), mortifer.  
most people, plerique.  
mother, mater, tris.  
mound, agger, eris, M.  
mourn, maereo, 2, ui.  
mountain, mons, tis, M.  
mountaineer, montānus, i.  
move, mōveo, 2, mōvi, mōtus.  
forward, prōmōveo.  
—change residence, dēmī-  
gro, 1.  
be on the, Mid. of mōveo.  
much, multus; multum.  
multitude, multitūdo, inis, F.  
murder, trucidō, 1; occidō, 3, cidi, cīsus.  
caedēs, is, F.  
the—of Caesar = C. mur-  
dered.  
murderer, qui trucidat, etc.  
assassin, sicārius, i.

## N.

name, nōmino, 1; appello, 1.  
name, nōmen, inis, N.  
good, fāma.  
narrow, angustus.  
nation, gens, tis, F.; populus;  
tribe, clan, nātio, ōnis, F.  
nature, nātūra.  
indoles, is, F.; ingenium.  
nay rather, immo.  
near (adj.), proximus; vicīnus.  
(adv.) prope, iuxtā.  
near to (prep.), prōpe; sub.  
nearly, prōpe; paene.  
need, egeo, ēre (abl.).  
there is, opus est.  
needy, egens, tis.  
neglect, negligo, 3, glexi, glectus.  
neither—nor, nec—nec; neque—neque.  
neither of two, neuter.  
never, nunquam.  
and never, nec unquam.  
nevertheless, tamen.  
new, nōvus; recens, tis.  
news, nuntius, i.  
what news? quid nōvi?  
next, proximus; insequens, tis.  
following, posterus.

on the next day, postridiē.  
(adv.), proximē; deinde.  
next to, iuxtā.  
night, nox, noctis, F.  
night (adj.), nocturnus.  
ninth, nōnus.  
no one, nēmō; nullus.  
nowhere, nusquam.  
noble, nōbilis, e; generōsus.  
nobody, no man, nēmō.  
no longer, non diūtius.  
Nones, Nōnae, ārum.  
nothing, nihil.  
nor, nec; neque.  
(final), neu.  
not yet, nondum.  
nourish, alo, 3, ui, altus.  
now = at this time, nunc.  
= already, by this time, iam.  
number, numerus, i.  
great, multitūdo, inis, F.  
a greater, plūrēs.  
numerous = many.

## O.

oar, rēmus, i.  
oath, iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandi;  
military, sacrāmentum.  
obey, pāreo, 2, ui, pāritūrus.  
obēdio, 4, ivi, itum.  
object to, recūso quīn.  
object, intention, consilium.  
this is my, hōc ago, peto, ut.  
obliged, to be, necesse est; gerundive.  
observe, animadverto, 3, ti, versus;  
conspicio, 3, spexi, spectus;  
conspicor, 1.  
—regard, servo, 1.  
obstacle, impedimentum.  
obtain, consequor, 3, secūtus; pāro, 1.  
adipiscor 3, adeptus.  
a request, impetro, 1.  
occurs, it, accidit; contingit; ēvēnit.  
odium, invidia.  
offence, dēlictum; peccātum.  
office, magistrātus, ūs; honōs, ōris, M.  
officers, tribūni militum; centuriōnēs.  
old age, senectus, ūtis, F.  
old man, senex, senis.  
old-time (adj.), antiquus.  
on account of, ob; propter.  
on this side of, cis; citrā.

**once**, semel;  
—formerly, quondam.  
at once, statim.

**one**, unus.  
a certain one, quidam.

**only**, solum; modo; tantum.  
not only—but also, nōn solum  
—sed etiam.

**open**, aperio, 4, ui, tus.

**open**, apertus; patens, tis.

**openly**, palam.

**opinion**, sententia; Adapt.

**opportunity**, occasio, ōnis, F.

**oppose** (trans.), oppōno; obicio, 3, iēci,  
iectus.  
(intrans.), adversor, 1; obsto, 1,  
stiti, stātūrus.  
resisto, 3, stiti.

**opposite**, adversus; contrārius.

**oration**, ōrātio, ōnis, F.

**orator**, ōrātor, ōris.

**oracle**, ōrāculum.

**order**, iubeo, 2, iussi, iussus.  
impero, 1 (dat. and ut).  
ordo, inis, M.

**other**, alius.

**otherwise**, aliter.  
than, aliter or secus ac or  
quam.

**ought**, dēbeo, 2; oportet; gerundive.

**our**, noster, tra, trum.

**our men**, nostri, ōrum.

**out of**, ē, ex.

**outside of**, extrā.

**outpost**, picket, stātio, ōnis, F.

**over**, suprā, super.  
—across, trans; in (abl.).

**overthrow**, ēverto, 3, ti, sus.

**overturn**, ēverto.

**overwhelm**, opprimo, 3, pressi, pressus.

**owe**, dēbeo, 2.

## P.

**pain**, dōlor, ōris, M.; angor.  
trouble, cūra; sollicitūdo, inis, F.

**pains**, take, operam dare (dat. ut).

**Palatine mount**, mons Palatinus.

**panic**, pavor, ōris, M.  
there was a, trepidātum est.

**panic-stricken**, perterritus.

**pardon**, ignosco, 3, nōvi, nōtūrus;  
condōno, 1; veniam do.  
venia.

**parent**, pārens, tis.

**part**, pars, tis, F.  
take—in, intersum (dat.).

**party**, factio, ōnis, F.; partēs, ium, F.

**partly**, partim.

**pass**, praetereo, ire, ii, itus.  
saltus, ūs, M.  
narrow pass, angustiae, ārum.

**pass by (time)**, transeo.  
over, transeo; supero, 1.

**pass over**—leave unsaid, ōmitto.

**passage**, transitus, ūs, M.

**passion**, be in, irascor, ci, irātus.  
in a, irātus.

**past**, praeteritus;  
the, praeterita, ōrum, N. Pl.

**pathless**, invius.

**patience**, patientia.  
with, aequo animo; pa-  
tienter.

**patricians**, patrēs.

**patriot**, bonus cīvis.

**pay**, solvo, 3, solvi, solūtus.  
penalty (of), poenam dare.

**peace**, pax, pācis, F.  
ōtium.

**peaceful**, pācātus.  
=at peace, reduced to  
peace.

**peculiar**, proprius.

**penalty**, poena.  
pay, poenam or poenas dare.  
inflict upon, poenas sumere  
de (abl.).

**perceive (mentally)**, intellego, 3, lexi,  
lectus.

**perfidious**, perfidus.

**perform**, facio; conficio, 3, fēci, fectus.  
(duty) fungor, gī, functus.

**peril**, periculum.

**perish**, pereō, ire, ii, itūrus; intereo.

**permit**, permitto.

**permitted**, I am, licet mihi.

**permission**. Adapt to licet.

**person**, in, ipse.

**persuade**, persuādeo, 2, suāsi, suāsum.

**philosopher**, philosophus, i.

**philosophy**, philosophia.

**pierce through**, transfigo, 3, fixi, fixus.

**piety**, pietās, ātis, F.

**pirate**, praedo, ōnis.

**pitch camp**, castra loco or pōno.

**pity**, miseresco, ēre; misereor, 2;  
I pity, mē miseret (gen.).

**pity**, misericordia.

**place**, pōno, 3, posui, positus; lōco, 1.  
lōcus, i, M.; N. in Pl.  
**place after**, posthabeo, 2; postpōno.  
**plain**, campus, 1.  
**plan**, consilium; prōpositum.  
**pleasant**, incundus; (**place**) amoenus.  
**please**, placeo, 2, ui, itūrus (dat.).  
dēlecto, 1.  
**pleasing**, grātus.  
**pleasure**, voluptās, ātis, F.  
**plebeian**, plēbeius.  
**plebeians**, plēbs, plēbis, F.  
**plot**, coniuratio, ōnis, F.; consilium.  
**plunder**, spolio, 1; populo, 1;  
diripio, 3, ripui, repta.  
**point out**, monstro, 1;  
ostendo, 3, di, tus.  
**poison**, venēnum.  
**policy**, consilium or Pl.  
**Pompey**, Pompeius.  
**poor**, pauper, ēris; inops, ōpis.  
**popularity**, favor, ōris, M.; grātia.  
**possession**, gain—of, potior, 4, po-  
tītus.  
**post**, desert a, locum dēsero, 3, ui,  
sertus.  
**postpone**, differo, ferre, distuli, dilātus.  
postpōno.  
**poverty**, paupertās, ātis, F.  
**power (military)**, imperium.  
(civil), pōtestās, ātis, F.  
**powerful**, potens, tis.  
**practise**, exerceo, 2.  
**praise**, laus, laudis, F.  
**praiseworthy**, to be praised, laud-  
andus.  
**pray**, prēcō, 1.  
**prayer** (prex.), prēcis, obsecratio, ōnis, F.  
**precept**, praeceptum.  
**predict**, praedico, 3, dixi, dictus.  
**prefer**, mālō, malle, mālui (with infin.).  
antepōno; praepōno.  
**prepare**, pārō, 1.  
**present**, praesens, tis.  
am, adsum; intersum.  
**presently**, mox, brevi.  
**preserve**, servo, 1; conservo.  
**press**, premo, 3, pressi, pressus.  
**press on**, insto, 1, stiti.  
**pretend**, simulo, 1.  
**prevent**, prōhibeo, 2; obsto, 1, stiti,  
stāturus.

**previous**, prior.  
**price**, pretium.  
**prince**, princeps, ipis.  
**prime**=adv., primum omnium; maximē.  
**prison**, carcer, eris, M.; vincula, ōrum,  
N. Pl.  
**put in**, in vincula conicere or  
dare.  
**prisoner**, captivus, i.  
**probable**, vērissimilis, e.  
**proceed**, prōcēdo, 3, cessi, cessurus;  
prōgredior, gredi, gressus.  
**proconsul**, prōconsul, ulis.  
**proclaim**, prōclāmo, 1; prōnuntio, 1.  
**profess**, prōfiteor, 2, fessus.  
**promise**, prōmittō; polliceor, 2, polli-  
citus.  
prōmissum; fidēs, ei, F.  
**proof**, indicium.  
**property**, bōnā, N. Pl.  
**proportion**, in—to, prō (abl.).  
**prosperity**, rēs secundae or prosperae.  
**prosperous**, secundus.  
**protect**, dēfendo, 3, di, sus; tueor, 2.  
**proud**, superbus.  
**provide**, suppedito, 1; prōvideo, 3, vidi,  
vīsus;  
for, prōvideo (dat.); prōspicio,  
3, spexi, spectus (dat.).  
**province**, prōvincia.  
**provisions**, commeātus, ūs.  
**prudence**, prūdētia.  
**prudent**, prūdēns, tis.  
**public**, publicus.  
**punish**, pūnio, 4; poenas sumere dē;  
animadverto in (acc.).  
**punishment**, poena; supplicium.  
**pupil**, discipulus, i.

## Q.

**quarter**, pars, tis, F.  
from every, undique.  
**question**, rēs.  
**quick**, celer, is, e; vēlox, ōcis.  
**quickly**, celeriter; vēlōciter.  
as—as possible, quam cel-  
errimē.  
**quiet**, quiētus; tranquillus.

## R.

**race**, genus, eris, N.; gens, tis, F.  
**rage**, ira; furor, ōris, M.  
**raise**, tollo, 3, sustuli, sublātus.



ram, battering-ram, ariēs, ētis.  
 rampart, vallum.  
 rank, ordo, inis, M.  
 rashly, temere.  
 rashness, temeritās, ātis, F.  
 rate, at any, certe.  
 rather, potius.  
     had, mālō, malle, mālui.  
 ravage, vasto, 1.  
 reach, arrive at, pervenire ad.  
 read, lego, 3, lēgi, lectus.  
 ready, pārātus.  
 really, rē verā.  
 reap, mēto, 3, messui, messus.  
 rear, the, nōvissimum agmen, inis, N.;  
     nōvissimi.  
 rear, in the, ā tergo.  
 reason, a, causa; ratio, ōnis, F.;  
     (faculty), mens.  
 recall, rēvōco, 1.  
     to mind, rēminiscor, ci; rē-  
     corder, 1;  
     vēnit mihi in mentem (gen.).  
 receive, accipio, 3, cēpi, ceptus,  
 recklessly, temere.  
 recklessness, temeritās, atis, F.  
     audācia.  
 reconnoitre, explōro, 1.  
 recover, get back, rēcipio, 3, cēpi,  
     ceptus; rēcuperō, 1.  
     get well, convalesco, 3, valui.  
 recruit, tīro, ōnis.  
 reference, in — to, de (abl.).  
 reflect, cogito, 1.  
 refrain, abstineo, 3, ui, tentus.  
 refresh, reficio, 3, fēcī, fectus.  
 refuge, refugium; effugium.  
     seek, confugio, 3, fūgi, fugi-  
     tūrus.  
     sē rēcipio.  
 refuse, nēgo, 1; rēcūso, 1.  
 regard, in — to, quod attinet ad.  
 region, regio, ōnis, F.  
 regret, dēsīdero, 1; mē piget.  
     dēsīderium.  
 reign, regnum; imperium.  
     regno, 1.  
 reinforcement, subsidium.  
 rejoice, gaudeo, 2, gāvīsus; laetor, 1.  
 relate, narro, 1; memoro, 1.  
 relative, prōpinquus, i.  
 relax, rēmitto.

relieve, lēvo, 1.  
     aid, subvenio; succurro.  
 reluctantly, adj., invitus.  
 rely upon, confido, 3, fisus.  
 relying on, frētus (abl.).  
 remain, maneo, 2, si, sūrus.  
 remaining, reliquus.  
 remember, meminī; rēcorder, 1;  
     rēminiscor, ci.  
 Remi, Rēmi, ōrum.  
 remind, moneo; admoneo.  
 renowned, clārus.  
 repair, rēficio; rēpāro, 1.  
 repent, poenitet mē.  
 reply, rēspondeo, 2, di, sum.  
     responsum.  
 report, nuntio, 1, renuntio.  
     fāma; rūmor, ōris, M.  
 reproach, alicui aliquid obicio.  
 reputation, fāma.  
 request, peto, 3, petivi, itus;  
     obtain a, impetro, 1.  
 rescue, eripui, 3, ripui, reptus; libero, 1.  
     come to the, subsidio venīre;  
     subvenio.  
 resignation, aequus animus.  
 resist, resisto, 3, stiti.  
 resolution, sententia;  
     courage, fortitūdo, inis, F.  
 resolve, = determine.  
 resources, opēs, um, F.  
 rest, quīēs, ētis, F.; requiēs.  
     ōtium.  
     the, cēteri, ōrum; reliquus.  
 restore, reddo, 3, reddidi, redditus;  
     rēstituo, 3, ui, ūtus.  
 restrain, coerceo, 2; rēprimo, 3, pressi,  
     pressus; comprimo.  
 retain, rētineo, 2, ui, tentus.  
 retire, rēcādo, 3, cessi, cessūrus; dēcādo;  
     sē rēcipio.  
 retreat, mē rēcipio; cēdo;  
     pedem rēfero; signa rēfero.  
 return, rēdeo, 4, ii, itūrus.  
     rēvertor, ti, revertit.  
     reditus, ūs, M.  
 revenge, take—on, ulciscor, ci, ultus.  
 revolt, dēficio, 3, fēcī, fectus.  
 reward, prāemium; mercēs, ēdis, F.  
 Rhine, Rhēnus, i.  
 ride on horseback, vēhor, vehi, vec-  
     tus; equito, 1.  
 rich, divēs, itis; opulentus.  
 riches, divitiae, ārum; opēs, um, F.



ridge, iugum.  
 right, iustus.  
     iūs, iūris, N.; fas (indecl.).  
 rightfully, iūre, rectē.  
 risk, periculum.  
 river, flūmen, inis, N.  
 road, via.  
 rob, spolio, 1.  
 robber, latro, ōnis ; praedo, ōnis.  
 rock, rūpēs, is, F.; saxum.  
 roll, volvo, 3, volvi, volūtus.  
     down, dēvolvo.  
 rough, asper, era, erum.  
 rouse, excito, 1.  
 rout, fugo, 1 ; pello, 3, pepuli, pulsus;  
     fundo, 3, fūdi, fūsus.  
 route, iter, itineris, N. ; via.  
 royal, regius.  
 rudely, superbē ; arroganter.  
 ruin, perdo, 3, didi, ditus.  
     dēleo, 2, ēvi, ētus.  
     interitus, ūs, M.; exitium;  
     perniciēs, ēi, F.  
 rule, rego ; imperō, 1.  
 ruler, rex ; magistratus, ūs.  
 run, curro, 3, cucurri, cursum ;  
     down, dēcurro.  
     into, incurro.  
 rush out, ērumpo, 3, rūpi, ruptus.  
     sē ēicio.  
 rush, impetus, ūs, M.

S.

sacrifice, macto, 1.  
 sad, tristis, e ; moestus.  
 safe, tūtus ; incolumis, e ; salvus.  
 safety, salūs, ūtis, F.  
     in= safe.  
 sail, vēlum.  
     set, vēla dare ; nāvigo, 1 ; vehor,  
     1, vectus.  
     across, transvehor.  
 sailor, nauta.  
 sally, ēruptio, ōnis, F.  
 salute, salūto, 1.  
 same, Idem.  
 satisfaction, demand, rēs repeto.  
 savage, barbarus ; ferus.  
 save, servo, 1.  
 say, dico, 3, dixi, dictus ;  
     inquam, inquit in O.R.  
 scarcely, vix.

scatter (trans.), spargo, 3, si, sus.  
     (intrans.), aufugio, 3, fūgi,  
     fugitūrus ; diffugio.  
 scattered, dispersus.  
 scorn, treat with scorn, aspernor, 1 ;  
     sperno, 3, sprēvi, sprētus ; con-  
     temno, 3, tempsi, temptus.  
 scout, explōrator, ōris.  
 sea, mare, maris, N. ; pontus, i.  
 season, time, tempus, oris, N.  
 seat, sedēs, is, F ; sella.  
 second, secundus ; alter.  
 secretly, clam.  
 see, video, 2, vidi, vīsus.  
     aspicio, 3, spexi, spectus ; conspicio.  
 see that, see to, cūro, 1.  
 seek, peto, 3, petivi, itus ;  
     quaero, 3, quaesivi, situs.  
 seem, videor, 2, vīsus.  
 seize, rapio, 3, ui, raptus ;  
     corripio, 3, ui, reptus.  
     capio ; occupo, 1 ; comprehendo,  
     3, di, sus.  
 seldom, rāro ; nōn saepe.  
 select, dēligo, 3, lēgi, lectus.  
 self, ipse.  
 sell, vendo, 3, vendidi, ditus.  
 senate, senātus, ūs.  
 senate—house, cūria.  
 senator, senātor, ōris.  
 send, mitto, 3, misi, missus.  
     ahead, praemitto.  
 separate, divido, 3, vīsi, vīsus.  
 serve, servio, 4.  
 service, be of, prōsum, prōdesse, prō-  
     fui, prōfutūrus.  
 service, meritum.  
     military, militia.  
 set out, prōficiscor, ci, profectus.  
     over, praeficio, 3, fēci, fectus.  
     over, be, praesum.  
 set on fire, incendio, 3, di, sus.  
 settle (intrans.), consido, 3, sēdi.  
     (trans.), compōno ; see decide.  
 seventh, septimus.  
 several, complūrēs ; aliquot.  
 severely, grāviter.  
 shade, shadow, umbra.  
 shake, quatio, 3, quassi, quassus ;  
     concutio, 3, cussi, cussus.  
 shames, it, pudet.  
 shameful, turpis, e.  
 shatter, affligo, 3, flixi, flictus.

sheath, *vāgīna*.  
 shield, *scūtum* ; *clipeus*, *i*.  
 ship, *nāvis*, *is*, *F*.  
     *of-war*, *nāvis longa*.  
 shipwreck, *naufrāgium*.  
 shore, *litus*, *oris*, *N*.; *ōra*.  
 short, *brevis*, *e*.  
 shortly afterwards, *haud multo post*;  
     *paulo post*.  
 shoulder, *humerus*, *i*.  
 shout, *clāmo*, *1* ; *exclāmo* ; *conclāmo*.  
     *clāmor*, *ōris*, *M*.  
 show, *monstro*, *1* ; *ostendo*, *3*, *di*, *tus*.  
     *praesto*, *1*, *stiti*, *stitus*.  
 shower, *imber*, *bris*, *M*.  
 shrewd, *callidus*.  
 shut = close.  
 Sicily, *Sicilia*.  
 sick, *aeger*, *gra*, *grum*.  
 side, *lātus*, *eris*, *N*.; *pars*, *tis*, *F*.  
     *be by the — of*, *adsum*.  
 sides, *on both*, *utrimque*.  
 siege, *obsidio*, *ōnis*, *F*.  
 sight, *conspectus*, *ūs*, *M*.  
 sign, *signum*.  
 signal, *signum*.  
 silence, *silentium*.  
 silent, *am*, *taceo*, *2*, *ui* ;  
     *sileo*, *2*, *ui*.  
 silent, *tacitus* ; *silens*, *tis*.  
 silence, *in* = *tacitus*.  
 silver, *argentum*.  
 sin ; *pecco*, *i*.  
     *peccātum*.  
 since, (*adv.*), *postea*.  
     (*prep.*), *ē* ; *ex* ; *ad* ; *post*.  
     (*conj.*), *cum* ; *postquam* ; *quod*.  
 single, *ūnus* ; *sōlus*.  
 sink (*trans.*), *dēprimo*, *3*, *pressi*, *pressus*.  
 sister, *soror*, *ōris*.  
 sit, *sedeo*, *2*, *sēdi*, *sessūrus* ;  
     *consido*, *4*, *sēdi*.  
 skill, *consilium*.  
 skilled, *peritus* ; *doctus*.  
 sky, *caelum*.  
 slaughter, *caedēs*, *is*, *F*.  
 slave, *servus*, *i*.  
     *be a — to*, *servio*, *4*, *ivi*, *itūrus*,  
     (*dat.*).  
 slavery, *servitūs*, *ūtis*, *F*.  
 slay, *occido*, *3*, *cīdi*, *cīsus*.  
     *interficio*, *3*, *fēci*, *fectus*.

sleep, *dormio*, *4*, *ivi*, *itūrus*.  
     *somnus*, *i* ; *quies*, *ētis*, *F*.  
 sleepless, *insomnis*, *e*.  
 sling, *funda*.  
 slow, *tardus* ; *segnis*, *e*.  
 smoke, *fūmus*, *i*.  
 snatch, *ēripio*, *3*, *ui*, *reptus* ;  
     *dētraho*, *3*, *traxi*, *tractus*.  
 snow, *nix*, *nivis*, *F*.  
 so, *ita* ; *with verbs*, *adeo* ;  
     *with adj. or adv.*, *tam*.  
     — *accordingly*, *itaque* ; *igitur*.  
 so great, *so much*, *tantus*.  
 so far from, *tantum abest ut*.  
 so that, *ut*.  
 soldier, *miles*, *itis*.  
 some (*adj.*), *aliqui*, *qua*, *quod*.  
 some one, *aliquis*, *qua*, *quid*.  
 some—others, *alii—alii*.  
 somewhat, *aliquantum*.  
 somewhere, *alicubi*.  
 sometimes, *nonnunquam* ; *interdum*.  
 son, *filius*, *i* ; *nātus*, *i*.  
 son-in-law, *gener*, *eri*.  
 soon, *mox* ; *brevi* ; *iam*.  
 sorrow, *dolor*, *ōris*, *M*.; *luctus*, *ūs*, *M*.  
     *be in*, *doleo*, *2*, *ui*, *itūrus* ;  
     *lūgeo*, *2*, *lūxi*, *lūxūrus* ;  
     *moereo*, *ēre*.  
 sorry, *am*, *poenitet me*.  
 soul, *animus*, *i* ; *anima*.  
 sound, *sonitus*, *ūs*, *M*.; *sonus*, *i*.  
 sovereign power, *regnum* ; *imperium*.  
 sow, *sero*, *3*, *sēvi*, *satus*.  
 Spaniard, *Hispanus*.  
 spare, *parco*, *3*, *peperci*, *parsūrus*.  
 speak, *loquor*, *loqui*, *locūtus* ; *dico*.  
 speaker, *ōrātor*, *ōris*.  
 spear, *hasta*.  
 spectator, *is qui adest*.  
 speech, *ōrātio*, *ōnis*, *F*.  
 speed, *celeritās*, *ātis*, *F*.  
     *with all*, *quam celerrimē*.  
 spend (time), *ago*, *3*, *ēgi*, *actus* ;  
     *consumō*, *3*, *sumpsi*,  
     *sumptus*.  
 spent—exhausted, *confectus*.  
 spirit, *animus*, *i*.  
 spoil, *spolio*, *1*.  
     = *corrupt*, *corrumpo*, *3*, *rūpi*,  
     *ruptus*.  
 spoil, *praeda*.  
 spoils, *spolia*, *ōrum*, *N*. *Pl*.

spot, locus, i, M.  
 on the, illico.  
 spring from, orior, Iri, ortus.  
 spring (time), vēr, vēris, N.  
 (water), fons, fontis, F.  
 spur, calcar, aris, N.  
 spurs, put to, calcaria subdo, 3, didi,  
 ditus.  
 squadron, turma.  
 stand, sto, stāre, steti, statūrus.  
 —take one's stand,  
 consisto, 3, stiti.  
 stand for=seek, peto.  
 standard, signum; vexillum.  
 star, stella; sidus, eris, N.  
 start, set out, prōficiscor, ci, prōfectus.  
 up, orior, oriri, ortus.  
 state, civitās, ātis, F.  
 stay, moror, 1; commoror;  
 maneo, 2, mansi, sūrus.  
 stealthily, furtim; clam.  
 step, passus, ūs, M.  
 stick to, adhaereo, 2, haesi, haestus.  
 still, adhuc; tum (of past time);  
 etiam nunc (of present time).  
 stir up, concito, 1.  
 stone, lapis, idis, M.; saxum.  
 storm, oppugno, 1.  
 take by, expugno, 1.  
 storm, tempestās, ātis, F.  
 story, a, fābula.  
 the, hae rēs; hic nuntius.  
 stoutly, fortiter.  
 strange, nōvus; mīrus.  
 stratagem, consilium; dōlus, i.  
 street, via.  
 strength, vīrēs, ium, F.  
 strike, percutio, 3, cussi, cussus.  
 strip, spolio, 1; exuo, 3, ui, ūtus.  
 strive, nītor, nīti, nīsus or nixus;  
 cōnor, 1.  
 strong, validus; rōbustus.  
 struggle, contendo, 3, di, tentus.  
 pugna; certāmen, inis, N.  
 subdue, vinco, 3, vīci, victus;  
 supero, 1.  
 success, fēlicem esse.  
 such, tālis.  
 —so great, tantus.  
 such—as, tālis—quālis;  
 tantus—quantus.  
 sudden, subitus; repentinus.  
 suddenly, subito.

sue for=seek, peto.  
 suffer, patior, pati, passus.  
 suffering, labor, ōris, M.; dolor, ōris, M.  
 sufficient, satis.  
 sufficiently, satis.  
 suggest, moneo, 2; suādeo, 2, suāsi,  
 suāsum.  
 suicide, commit, se interficio;  
 sibi mortem conscisc-  
 co, 3, scīvi, scītus.  
 summer, aestās, ātis, F.  
 summit, (mons) summus.  
 summon, vōco, 1; convōco, 1;  
 arcesso, 3, sīvi, sītus.  
 sun, sōl, sōlis, M.  
 sunrise, sōl oriens; prīma lux.  
 sunset, sōlis occāsus, ūs M.  
 superior, supērior; mēlior.  
 suppose=think.  
 supreme command, summa imperii.  
 supply, cōpia.  
 of corn, rēs frūmentāria.  
 prōvideo, 2, vīdi, vīsus.  
 surely, certo; prōfecto; nīmīrum.  
 surprise=attack.  
 surprised, am, mīror, 1.  
 surrender, (trans.), trādo, 3, didi, di-  
 tus; dēdo.  
 (mid.), sē trādere; sededere.  
 dēditio, ōnis, F.  
 surround, circumdo, 1, dedi, datus;  
 circumsisto, 3, stiti;  
 circumvenio.  
 survive, supersum (dat.).  
 suspect, suspicor, 1.  
 swamp, palūs, ūdis, F.  
 swear, iūro, 1.  
 swift, vēlox, ōcis.  
 swiftness, celeritās, ātis, F.;  
 vēlocitās, ātis, F.  
 swim, nāto, 1.  
 sword, gladius, i; ferrum.

## T.

take, capio, 3, cēpi, captus;  
 sūmo, 3, sumpsi, sumptus.  
 take from, adimo, 3, ēmi, emptus.  
 aufero, ferre, abstuli, ablā-  
 tus.  
 up (arms), capio.  
 take ill or amiss, aegrē or graviter  
 fero.  
 take to flight, sē in fugam dare.  
 aufugio.

take another's place, succēdo, 3,  
cessi, cessūrus.

take captive, capio.

talkative, loquax, ācis.

teach, doceo, 2, ui, doctus.

tear, scindo, 3, scidi, scissus.

tear, lacrima.

tell, dico; narro, 1.

temple, templum.

tend to, pertineo, 2, ui, tentus ad.

tent, tabernāculum.

tenth, decimus.

terrific, maximus.

terms, be on intimate—with, fami-  
liāriter ūti.

terms (of peace), condicio, ōnis, F.

terrify, terreo, 2.

terror, in, perterritus.

territory, finēs, M.; agri.

than, quam.

thank, gratias ago, 3, ēgi, actus.

thanksgiving, supplicatio, ōnis, F.

theft, furtum.

then, tum; eō tempore.

thence, inde.

there, ibi, illuc.

there is, = is, est.

therefore, itaque; igitur; ergo.

thief, fur, furis.

their, suus; eōrum, eārum.

think, puto, 1; existimo, 1;  
arbitror, 1.

thither, eō; hūc.

thigh, femur, ōris, N.

thoroughly, penitus; omnino.

though, etsi.

threat, minae, ārum.

threaten, minor, 1.

threatening, minax, ācis.

three, trēs, tria.

three days, trēs diēs; triduum.

throne, regnum; imperium.

be on, regno, 1; impero, 1.

throne, gain, regno potiri.

throw, iacio, 3, iēci, iactus.  
conicio, 3, iēci, iectus.  
away, abicio.  
down, deicio.

tidings, nuntius; hae rēs; haec.  
bring—of, nuntio, 1.

till, colo, 3, ui, cultus.

time, tempus, oris, N.

to-day, hodiē.

together, simul; unā cum.

toil, labor, ōris, M.

to-morrow, crās.

tongue, lingua.

too, too much, nimis; nimium.

touch at, attingo, 3, attigi, attactus.

towards, ad; versus; adversus; ergā.

tower, turris, is, F.

town, oppidum; urbs, bis, F.

townspeople, oppidāni, ōrum.

track, vestigium.

train (baggage), impedimenta, ōrum,  
N. Pl.

traitor, prōditor, ōris.

transport, transveho, 3, vexi, vectus.  
transporto, 1.

travel, iter facio.

traverse, supero, 1; transeo.

treacherous, perfidus.

treachery, perfidia; fraus, dis, F.;  
dolus, i, M.; prōditio, ōnis,  
F.

treason, maiestās, ātis, F.; prōditio,  
ōnis, F.

treat for peace, to, pacem petere;  
de pace.

treaty, foedus, eris, N.

tree, arbor, oris, F.

trench, fossa.

Treveran, Treverus.

trial, iudicium.

tribe, natio, ōnis, F.; gens, tis, F.

tribune, tribūnus, i.

triumph, victōria.  
(ceremony), triumphus, i.  
in, victorious, victor, ōris.

troop, turma.

troops, cōpiae, arum; militēs.

trouble, mōlestia.

be in, labōro, 1.

troublesome, mōlestus.

truce, indūtiae, ārum.

true, vērus.

trust, confido, 3, fisus.

believe, crēdo, 4, didi, ditus.

trustworthy, fidus.

truth (abs.), vērītās, ātis, F.

the, vērā, ōrum, N. Pl.

try, cōnor, 1; experior, 4, pertus.

tumult, tūmultus, ūs, M.  
mōtus, ūs, M.

turn, *verto*, 3, *ti*, *sus*;  
back, *rêverto*.  
away, aside, *âverto*.  
out, happen, *êvenio*.

turn, in, *invicem*.

twin, *geminus*, *i*.

two, *duo*, *duae*, *duo*.

tyrant, *tyrannus*, *i*.

## U.

unable, *am*, *nequeo*, 4, *quîvi*; non  
possum.

unanimously, = by all, by the  
votes of all.

unarmed, *inermis*, *e*.

unbecoming, it is, *dedecet*.

unconnected with, *expers*, *tis* (*gen.*).

uncertain, *incertus*.

under, sub (*acc.* and *abl.*).

undergo, *subeo*, 4, *ii*, *itûrus*.

undertake, *suscipio*, 3, *cēpi*, *ceptus*.

understand, *intellego*, 3, *lexi*, *lectus*.

undiminished, *integer*, *gra*, *grum*.

unequal, *impar*; *iniquus*.

Unelli, *Unelli*, *ōrum*.

unexpected, *necopinātus*.

unfavorable, *iniquus*.

unfortunate, *infelix*, *icis*.

unfriendly, *inimicus*.

unhappy, *infelix*, *icis*.

unholy, *impius*; *âtrox*, *ôcis*.

unheard, *causâ incognitâ*; *indictâ*  
*causâ*, (*abl. abs.*).

universal, = *omnēs*, *ium*.

unjust, *iniquus*.

unknown, *ignôtus*.

unlike, *dissimilis*, *e*.

*dispar*, *paris*,

unmindful, *immemor*, *ōris*.

unnecessary, non *necesse* (*est*).

unskilfully, *imperitê*.

unskilled, *imperitus*.

until, *dum*; *donec*; *quoad*.

untrustworthy, *perfidus*.

unusual, *insolitus*; *nōvus*.

unused to, *imperitus*; *insuētus*.

unwell, *am*, *aegrôto*, 1; *aeger sum*.

unwilling, *invîtus*.

*am*, *nôlo*, *nolle*, *nôlui*.

unworthy, *indignus*, (*abl.*).

up to, *ad*; *sub*.

upwards of, = more than; *ad* (*acc.*).

urge, *suâdeo*, 2, *suâsi*, *suâsum*.

use, *ûsus*, *ûs*, *M*.

useful, *ûtilis*, *e*.

used to, = *impf. tense*.

utterly, *funditus*; *omnino*.

## V.

vain, *vānus*; *irritus*.

in, *frustrâ*; *nequidquam*.

valley, *vallis*, *is*, *F*.

valor, *virtus*, *ûtis*, *F*.

valuable, *pretiōsus*.

value, *aestimo*, 1.

vanquished, *victus*.

variance, *at*, *contrârius*.

vast, *ingens*, *tis*.

Veneti, *Veneti*, *ōrum*.

venture, *audeo*, 2, *ausus*.

verdict, *sententia*.

verily, *prōfecto*; *nimîrum*.

very, = Superlative; *ipse*.

Vergil, *Virgil*, *Vergilius*.

veteran, *veterānus*.

veto, *intercêdo*, 3, *cessi*, *cessûrus*.

vice, *turpitûdo*, *inis*, *F*.

victim, *hostia*.

victorious, *victor*, *ōris*.

victory, *victōria*.

vigorously, *vehementer*; *acriter*.

village, *vîcus*, *i*, *M*.

violate, *violo*, 1.

violence, *vis*; *violentia*.

virgin, *virgo*, *inis*.

virtue, *virtus*, *ûtis*, *F*; *pietâs*, *âtis*, *F*.

virtuously, *honestê*.

visit, *adeo*; *vîso*, 3, *vîsi*, *vîsus*.

voice, *vox*, *vôcis*, *F*.

voluntarily, *sponte*; *ultro*.

vote, *suffrâgium*; *sententia*.

vow, *voveo*, 2, *vôvi*, *vôtus*.

vulture, *vultur*, *uris*, *M*.

## W.

wage (war), *gero*, 3, *gessi*, *gestus*.

wait for, *expecto*, 1.

wall, *mûrus*, *i*, *M*.

(fortified), *moenia*, *ium*, *N. Pl.*  
(partition), *pariês*, *êtis*, *M*.



walk, ambulo, 1.  
 wander, erro, 1; vagor, 1.  
 want, egeo, ēre (abl.);  
     careo, ēre (abl.).  
     opus est mihi (abl.).  
 want, inopia; egestās, ātis, F.  
 wanting, be—to, dēsum;  
     dēficio, 3, fēcī, fectus.  
 war, make—upon, bellum infero.  
 warship, navis longa.  
 warn, moneo.  
 waste, perdo, 3, didi, ditus.  
     lay, vasto, 1; dēpopulor, 1.  
 watch, observo, 1; custōdio, 4.  
     vigilia.  
 wave, fluctus, ūs, M.  
 way, via; iter, itineris, N.  
 weak, infirmus; invalidus.  
 wealth, opēs, um, F.; dīvitiae, ārum.  
 weapon, tēlum.  
 weariness (mental), taedium;  
     (bodily), lassitūdo, inis, F.  
 wearied, dēfessus.  
 weary (trans.), fatigo, 1.  
     (impers.), taedet me.  
 wed, see marry.  
 wedge, cuneus, i.  
 weep, fleo, 2, flēvi, flētūrus; lacrimo, 1.  
 weeping, flētus, ūs, M.; lacrimae, ārum.  
 well, bene, melius, optimē.  
 well, am, valeo, 2, ui.  
 well-known, nōtus.  
     it is, constat, āre, stitit.  
 west, occāsus (solis); (sōl) occidens.  
 wheel round, āvertor, ti, versus.  
 when, cum; ubi; ut.  
 when? quando? quō tempore?  
 whenever, cum; quoties. See 212.  
 whence, unde.  
 where, ubi.  
 wherefore, quārē; quamobrem.  
 whether, num.  
 whether—or, utrum—ān.  
     sive—sive; seu—seu.  
 which, quī, quae, quod.  
 which of two, uter, utra, utrum.  
 while, dum.  
     a little while afterwards,  
     haud multum post; paulō post.  
 whither, quō.  
 whithersoever, quōcumque.

who, which, what? quis, quae, quid?  
     (subst.).  
     quī, quae, quod?  
     (adj.).  
 whoever, whosoever, quicumque.  
 whole, tōtus; omnis.  
 why, cur; quārē; quamobrem.  
 wicked, malus; improbus; perditus.  
 wickedness, nēquitia; see crime.  
 wide, lātus.  
 wife, uxor, ōris; coniux, iugis.  
 wild, ferus.  
 will, voluntās, ātis, F.; arbitrium.  
     against one's will, invitus.  
     good-will, voluntās, ātis, F.  
     benevolentia.  
 win, potior, 4, potitus; pāro, 1;  
     consequor; adipiscor.  
 win over, concilio, 1.  
 wind, ventus, 1.  
 wine, vīnum.  
 wing, āla; penna;  
     (of infantry), cornu, ūs, N.;  
     (of cavalry), āla.  
 winter, hiems, mis, F.  
 wisdom, sapientia; prūdentia; con-  
     siliū.  
 wise, sapiens; prūdens.  
 wish, volo, velle, volui;  
     desire, cupio, 3, cupīvi, itus.  
 wish, voluntās, ātis, F.  
 wishes, my (ea), quae volo.  
 with, cum (abl.).  
 withdraw, abdūco (trans.).  
     (intrans.), excēdo; mē re-  
     cipio.  
 within, (prep.), intrā.  
 without, sine.  
 without the knowledge of,  
     clam (acc.); A.A.  
 without, am, careo, 2, ui (abl.).  
 woman, mulier, eris; femina.  
 wonder, mīror, 1.  
 wonderful, mīrus.  
 wont, am—to, soleo, 2, solitus.  
     consuesco, 3, suēvi,  
     suētus.  
 wood, forest, silva.  
     timber, lignum.  
 word, verbum;  
     fidēs, eī, F.  
 work, opus, eris, N.  
 world. See Addenda.



worse, pēior.

worth, virtūs, ūtis, F.

it is — one's while, operae  
pretium est.

worthless, inūtilis, e.

(fellow), nēquam (indecl).

worthy, dignus (abl.).

wound, vulnus, eris, N.

wound, vulnero, 1.

wounded, vulnerātus; saucius.

wreak vengeance on, ulciscor, ei,  
ultus.

wretched, miser, era, erum;  
infēlix, icis.

wrong, do, pecco, 1.

do — to, = harm.

wrong, am, erro, 1.

iniūria.

## Y.

year, annus, 1.

yell = shout, clāmor, ōris, M.

yesterday, heri.

of, hesternus.

yet, tamen; vēro.

not yet, nōndum.

as yet, adhūc; etiā nunc.

yield, cēdo, 3, cessi, cessūrus.

yoke, iugum.

young, iuvenis, is; adolescens, tis.

younger, iunior.

your, tuus; vester.

youth (time), iuventūs, ūtis, F.

(body), iuventūs, ūtis, F.

youth, a, iuvenis, is; adolescens, tis.

## Z.

zeal, studium.

zealous, studiōsus.

## ADDENDA.

absent, absens, tis.

break (law), violō, 1.

carelessly, indiligenter.

Ebro, Iberus, i.

err, erro, 1.

equal, his equal, eius par or similis.

expediency, ūtilitās, ātis, F; ūtilia,  
N. Pl.

fly, let fly, immitto, ēmitto.

gaol, custodia, ae; carcer, ēris, M.

hold, obtineo, 2, ui, tentus.

honor, honestās, ātis, F; honestā, N. Pl.

inaction, cesso, 1; nihil ago, 3, ēgi,  
actus.

lamb, agnus, i.

number, numero, 1.

officer, lēgātus, i.

on, in with Acc. or Abl. See in.

only, Adv., solum.

proclamation, issue a, pronuntio, 1.

ready, am ready to = am willing,  
vōlo, velle, volui.

reveal, patefacio.

rule, = law, regula, ae.

sacrilege, sacrilēgium.

sooner, celerius; maturius.

starvation, fāmēs, is, F.

statement, these statements,  
haec, N. Pl.

success, fēlicitās, ātis, F.

a success, victoria.

unfold, expono, 3, posui, positus.

weather, tempestās, ātis, F.

world, universe, mundus, i.

this globe, tellūs, ūris, F.

all nations, orbis terrārum;  
omnēs gentēs.

all men, omnes; omnes  
homines.

life on earth, vita.



# INDEX.

(The references are to sections.)

- a, ab*, uses of, 5, 6.
- Ablative relations, 4. Verbs that take abl., 29. General treatment, 109-114.  
classification, 109. Abl. Proper, 110. Instrumental Abl., 111. Locative Abl., 112. Special rules, 113.
- Ablative Absolute, 49. Limitations to, 50.  
of Agents, 110 (5).  
of Accompaniment, 111 (3).  
of Attendant Circumstance, 111 (2).  
of Cause, 111 (1).  
of Comparison, 110 (4).  
of Manner, 111 (1).  
of Means, 111 (1).  
of Motion away from, 110 (1).  
of Measure of Difference, 111 (5).  
of Place Where, 112 (1).  
of Place from Which, 112 (2).  
of Price, 111 (4).  
of Quality, 111 (6).  
of Route by Which, 112 (3).  
of Separation, 110 (3).  
of Source or Origin, 110 (2).  
of Specification or Respect, 111 (7).  
of Time When, 112 (4).  
of Time within Which, 112 (5).  
with Adjectives, 113.  
with *opus est* and *usus est*, 113 (3).  
with Prepositions, 114.
- Abstract nouns, translation of, 36.
- Accusative, general treatment, 97.  
Adverbial, 97 (9).  
Cognate, 97 (5).  
Direct Object, 97 (1).  
Duration of Time, 97 (10).  
Extent of Space, 97 (10).  
In Exclamations, 97 (12).  
Motion towards, 97 (6).  
of Respect, 97 (7).  
Two Accs., 97 (1, 2, 3).  
with Infin., 53.  
with Prepositions, 97 (11).
- Adjective, agreement with different nouns, 30 (2, 3).  
used substantively, 13.
- Adversative Conjunctions, 175.
- 'After' with time, 82.
- Age, how expressed, 86 (*c, e, f*).
- Agent, 5; 99 (7). Secondary agent, 110 (*b*).
- 'Ago,' 84.
- Answers to questions, 170.
- antequam*, 191, 196.
- Appositives, 12.
- Arrangement of Clauses, 37, 38.
- Attraction of Relative, 125 (2).
- 'But,' Indefinite Negative Relative, 158.
- 'By,' 5.
- Caesar, style of, 137.
- Calendar, 87-92.
- Calends, 88.

'Can,' 76.

Causal clauses, 176-180.

Cicero, style of, 138.

Characteristic, clauses of, 156-158.

Collective nouns, 31.

Commands, how expressed, 165.

Comparison, clauses of, 187-190.

with Indic., 188.

with Subj., 190.

Composite subjects, 30, 31.

Concessive clauses, 182-186.

Concrete instead of abstract, page 158, (ii).

Conditional clauses, 200-204.

Type I, 201. Type II, 202.

Type III, 203.

Idioms, 206. Irregular Constructions, 207.

In *Oratio Obliqua*, 214-216.

Connection of sentences, 16.

Consecutive clauses, 150-154.

Consistency of Latin style, 51.

*Constructio ad Sensum*, 31.

Co-ordinating relative, 222.

Correlatives, 129. Correlative adverbs, 131.

'Could,' 76.

*cum*, Causal, 179. Concessive, 185.

Temporal, 197-199. Denoting repeated action, 212.

Dative, verbs that take, 19.

general treatment, 98-103. Definition, 98.

of Agent, 99 (7).

of Indirect Object, 99 (1).

of Possessor, 99 (6).

of Purpose, 99 (8).

of Reference, 99 (3).

of Separation, 99 (5).

with Adjectives, 100.

with Adverbs, 101.

with Impersonal Verbs, 99 (9).

Ethical, 99 (4).

in Special Idioms, 102.

*debeo*, 78.

Declarative clauses in *O.O.*, 220.

Deliberative Subjunctive, 135 (5).

In *O.O.*, 222 (2).

Demonstrative Pronouns, 116.

Deponent Verb list, page 42.

Direct Reflexives, 122 (a).

Disjunctive Conjunctions, 175 (c) (6).

*doceo*, 'I inform,' with *de*, 97 (2).

Double Questions, 172.

*dono* and *circumdo*, double construction with, 103.

*dum*, with Subjunctive, 191.

with Present Indic., 193.

*dum*, *donec* and *quoad*, 194, 195.

*dum*, *modo*, *dummodo*, indicating 'wish' or 'proviso,' 205.

Duty, how expressed, 78.

Emphasis, how marked, 15.

Emphatic Pronoun, 119.

Epistolary style, 139. Epistolary tenses, Exercise LXIV, note 1.

*et is*—and that too, 116.

*etsi*, 183.

Fearing, construction with verbs of, 163.

Final Adverbs, 145.

Final clauses, 141-146.

Final Conjunctions, 141.

'For,' 3.

*fore ut*, 217.

*futurum fuisse*, 218.

Future Infin. Passive, how formed, 64.

Future Participle, 42.

Subjunctives, 155 (3).

Genitive, general treatment, 104-

108. With nouns, 105. With adjectives, 106. With verbs,

107. Special Idioms, 108.

of Indefinite Price, 107 (4) (*b*).

of Indefinite Value, 107 (4) (*a*).

of Quality, 105 (5).

of the Whole, 105 (4).

Appositional, 105 (6).

Partitive, 105 (4).

Possessive, 105 (1).

Objective, 105 (3).

Subjective, 105 (2).

with Adjectives, 106.

with Verbs *misereor*, etc., *memini*, etc., 107 (1).

with Verbs of accusing, etc., 107 (2), II.

with Impersonal Verbs, *misereor*, etc., 107 (2), III.

with Verbs of Plenty and Want, 107 (5).

Gerund, 66.

Gerund *vs.* Gerundive, 69.

Gerundive, 68-74.

construction, 69, 70. Special Points, 72, 73. Denoting Purpose, 74.

'He, she, it,' 59.

'His, her, its,' 10.

*hic*, 118.

Historic Infin., 52.

Tenses, 148.

Present, 17.

Hortative Subjunctive, 135 (1).

Hope, promise, construction with verbs of, 60.

Ides, 88.

*idem*, 117.

Idiom, differences of, 36.

'If,' 175 (*c*).

*ille*, 118.

Imperative, 165, 166.

Imperfect Tense, in Indic., 17; in Subj., 155 (1).

Impersonal verbs, classes and constructions, 28.

that take an *ut* clause, 163.

Impersonal Infinitives, 62 (2).

'In,' 8.

Indefinite pronouns, 128.

Indirect Narration, 220-222.

Object, 18, 19.

Reflexives, 122 (*b*).

Question, 173.

Infinitive Mood, uses of, 52. Acc. with Infin., 53. Impersonal Infin., 62 (2).

Interrogative Particles, 170.

word list, 171.

Pronouns, 127.

Intensive Pronouns, 119.

Intransitive Verbs, 18, 19, 21-26.

Verbs Trans. in English, In-

trans. in Latin, 19. Verbs

Trans. and Intrans., 22. Pas-

sive use of Intrans. verbs, 24.

English verbs Trans. and Intrans., 25.

*is*, *ea*, *id*, 10, 59, 116.

*ipse*, 119.

*iste*, 118.

Kalends, 88.

Livy, style of, 137.

Local Ablatives, 96.

Locative case, 95.

- 'May,' 77.  
 Measure of Difference, 111 (5).  
*memini*, etc., *misereor*, etc., 107 (1).  
*miseret*, etc., 107 (2), 111.  
 Metaphorical expressions, Latin equivalents, 32.  
 Middle Voice, 26.  
 'Might,' 77.  
 Modal Verbs, 27.  
 'Motion from,' 110 (1).  
 'Motion to,' 97 (6).  
 'Must,' 79.  
  
 Necessity, how expressed, 79.  
*nego*, 57.  
 Neuter Adjectives, 13.  
 Nones, 88.  
 Noun, the important word in English, 36.  
  
 Object Direct, 18.  
     Indirect, 18, 19.  
 Obligation, how expressed, 78.  
*Oratio Obliqua*, definition, 54.  
     General treatment, 220-223.  
     General rule for, 221. Virtual, 181, 209. Conditional clauses in, 214-216.  
*Oratio Recta*, definition, 54.  
 Optative Subjunctive, 135 (4).  
 Oratorical style, 138.  
 Order of words in Latin sentence, 14; 37.  
 'Ought,' 78.  
  
 Participles, list, 40. Idioms in connection with, 48.  
 Participle Present, 41. Difference between English and Latin, 45, 46.  
 Perfect, 43.  
  
 Future, 42.  
 Deponent, 43, 46.  
 Perfect tense, Indic., 17. Subjunctive, 155 (2).  
 Period, Periodic Structure, 47.  
     Limitations to use of, 136.  
 Permission, how expressed, 77.  
 Place, rules for, 93-96.  
     from which, 94.  
     in or at which, 95.  
     to which, 93.  
 Pluperfect tense in Latin for Repeated Action, 212.  
 Possessive Genitive, 105 (1).  
 Pronouns, 120.  
 Possibility, how expressed, 76.  
*postquam*, etc., 192.  
 Potential Subjunctive, 135 (8).  
 Prepositions with Acc., 97 (11).  
     with Abl., 114.  
 Predicate Nominative, 1.  
 Primary Tenses, 148.  
*priusquam*, 196.  
 Prohibitions, 166.  
 Pronoun, when omitted, when expressed, 11.  
 Pronouns, general treatment, 115-133.  
*protasis*, 200.  
 Proviso clauses, 205.  
 Purpose, ways of expressing, 142.  
  
*quanquam*, 183.  
*quamvis*, 184.  
*quanto—tanto*, 128 (*quisque*). Syntax of, 111 (5).  
 Questions, Direct, 170, 171.  
     Double, 172.  
     Indirect, 173.  
     Indirect Double, 174.



- qui*, 124. Agreement and special points, 125. Idioms, 126. with Subjunctive, 156.
- qui*, Final, 142. Consecutive, 153. In clauses of Characteristic, 156, 157. Causal, 180. Concessive, 185. In Indefinite Frequency, 212. Recapitulatory, 210, 211.
- quin*, 167. Phrases with, 168.
- quis*, used after *si*, *nisi*, etc., 128.
- quo* for *ut* in Purpose clauses, 146.
- quoad*, 194, 195.
- quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, Causal, 177.
- quod* in Substantive clauses, 164.
- quo—eo*, 128 (*quisque*). Syntax of, 111 (5).
- quominus*, 169.
- Relative Pronoun, 124. Special points, 125. Idioms, 126. Idiomatic uses with Subjunctive, 156. Recapitulatory, 210, 211. Co-ordinating Relative, 222.
- Relative clauses with Subjunctive, Final, 142. Consecutive, 153. Characteristic, 156-158. Causal, 180. Concessive, 185. In Repeated Action, 212. Recapitulatory, 210, 211.
- Reflexive Pronouns, 121.  
Direct Reflexives, 122 (*a*).  
Indirect Reflexives, 122 (*b*).
- Reciprocal Pronouns, 123.
- Result clauses, 150-155.
- Rhetorical Question, 220 (*c*).
- Sentence-Structure, 47, 63.
- Sequence of Tenses, 148, 155.
- 'Should,' 78.
- si non*, *sin*, *si minus*, 204.
- si*, semi-final, 208.
- Style and Connection, 16.
- Style, general treatment, 136.  
Epistolary, 139.  
Historical, 137.  
Oratorical, 138.  
Consistency of Latin style, 51.
- Subjunctive in Independent Sentences, 135.  
contrasted with Indic., 134.  
Concessive, 135 (6).  
Conditional, 135 (7).  
Deliberative, 135 (5).  
Hortative, 135 (1).  
Jussive, 135 (2).  
Optative, 135 (4).  
Potential, 135 (8).  
Prohibitive, 135 (3).
- Substantive clauses, 159-164.  
with *ut* and *ne* Definitive, 159.  
with verbs of Fearing, 162.  
with Impersonal verbs, 163.
- 'Such,' 130.
- sui*, 10, 122.
- suus*, 10, 122.
- sunt qui*, 156.
- Supine in *um*, 64.  
in *u*, 65.
- Supplementary Infin., 27.
- tantum abest ut*, 163.
- Temporal clauses, 191-199.
- Tenses, exact meaning, 17. Classification, 148. Tenses of Infin. in *O.O.*, 55; in consecutive clauses, 155. Sequence in final clauses, 148.
- Time, 80-86.  
'ago,' 84. At which, 80. Duration of, 81. Within which,

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>83. Prospective, 85. B.C.,<br/> 86 (<i>h</i>).<br/> ‘To,’ 2.<br/> Thought, translating the, 32.<br/> <i>ut</i>, Consecutive, 150.<br/> in clauses of Comparison, 187-<br/> 190.<br/> Definitive, 159.<br/> Final, 142.<br/> Temporal, 192.</p> | <p><i>vereor ne</i>, <i>vereor ut</i>, 162.<br/> Virtual Oratio Obliqua, 181, 209.<br/> <br/> ‘When,’ in logically principal<br/> clause, Exercise LXXXVIII,<br/> note 2; LXXXIX, 2.<br/> ‘Whether,’ uses of, 175.<br/> ‘While,’ Exercise XXVII, N.<br/> ‘With,’ 7.<br/> ‘Would,’ 167.</p> |
|---|--|
-









